

Lecture notes
NAST008: Cosmic electrodynamics

ŠŠ

February 6, 2017

Contents

1	Basics of statistical physics	11
1.1	Liouville's theorem	11
1.2	Statistical description of a physical system	12
1.3	Reduced distribution functions	13
1.4	Boltzmann equation	15
1.4.1	BBGKY hierarchy	17
1.4.2	Vlasov approximation	17
1.4.3	Fokker-Planck approximation	18
1.5	Fluid equations	18
1.5.1	Continuity equation	18
1.5.2	Euler equation	19
1.5.3	Energy equation	20
1.5.4	Closing the equations set	20
1.6	Thermodynamical equilibria	21
1.6.1	Statistical ensembles	23
1.6.2	Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution	24
1.6.3	Chemical equilibrium, Saha's equation	27
2	Plasma	29
3	Charged particle motion in electromagnetic fields	33
3.1	Homogeneous magnetic field	33
3.2	Homogeneous electric field	36
3.2.1	Relativistic E-B drift	39
3.2.2	Drift in the field of general force	41
3.3	Inhomogeneous magnetic field	42
3.4	Inhomogeneous electric field	46
3.5	Drift currents	49
3.6	Guiding centre motion	49
3.7	Magnetic mirrors	59
3.8	Adiabatic invariants	63
3.8.1	First adiabatic invariant	63
3.8.2	Second adiabatic invariant	64

3.8.3	Third adiabatic invariant	66
3.9	van Allen radiation belts	67
4	Plasma as fluid	71
4.1	Double-fluid approximation in physics of plasmas	71
4.1.1	Plasma approximation	72
4.2	Highly ionised plasmas	72
4.3	Single-fluid model	75
4.4	Approximations to plasma fluid	77
4.4.1	Force-free and ideal MHD	78
4.4.2	Axisymmetrical systems, stream functions	79
4.5	Drifts in the plasma fluid	81
4.5.1	Drifts perpendicular to \mathbf{B}	82
4.5.2	Drifts parallel to \mathbf{B}	82
5	Waves in plasmas	85
5.1	Linear waves	85
5.2	Example: Acoustic waves in fluids	86
5.3	Types of plasma waves	89
5.4	Plasma oscillations	91
5.5	Electron plasma wave	93
5.6	Ion waves	95
5.7	Electrostatic waves in background magnetic field	97
5.7.1	Electron	97
5.7.2	Ion	99
5.8	Electromagnetic waves	102
5.8.1	In vacuum: Light waves	102
5.8.2	In plasma	103
5.8.3	Complex of electromagnetic waves in presence of \mathbf{B}_0	106
5.9	MHD waves	112
5.10	Alfvén wave	112
5.11	General MHD waves	115
5.11.1	Mode conversion	119
6	Diffusion	121
6.1	Diffusion in weakly ionised plasmas	121
6.2	Diffusion in highly ionised plasmas	125
6.3	Diffusion in the magnetic field	126
7	Equilibrium and stability	129
7.1	Equilibrium	129
7.1.1	Diffusion of the magnetic field into plasmas	131
7.2	Instabilities	132
7.2.1	Two-stream instability	133

7.2.2	Gravitational instability	135
7.2.3	Universal instability	139
7.2.4	Landau damping	140

Appendices

Appendix A	Guiding centre motion	149
A.1	Alternative derivation of (3.133)	149
A.2	Derivation of equations (3.137)–(3.139)	150

ToDos

- Liouville theorem
- Eqs. (3.137) to (3.139) to be derived in the appendix.
- Section 4.4
- Relativistic E-B drift in the Appendix fully including the intermediate steps.

Preface

Blah

Korektury: Jan Kára, Lýdia Štofánová

Literature

- T. Padmanabhan: Theoretical astrophysics I, Cambridge University Press (2000), ISBN-13: 978-0521566322
- F. Shu: Physics of Astrophysics, vol. II, Gas dynamics, University Science Books (1992), ISBN-13: 978-0935702651
- J. Binney & S. Tremaine: Galactic dynamics, Princeton University Press (2008), ISBN-13: 978-0691130279
- F. F. Chen: Introduction to Plasma Physics and Controlled Fusion, Springer (2010), ISBN-13: 978-1441932013
- P. Kulhánek: Teorie plazmatu, studijní text pro FJFI ČVUT (2009), online <http://www.aldebaran.cz/studium/fpla.pdf>

Chapter 1

Basics of statistical physics

1.1 Liouville's theorem

... We will show that volume of the set Ω_t , which equals $\int_{\Omega_t} d^{6N}q$ is equal to volume of Ω_0 . At the first step, let us write

$$\int_{\Omega_t} d^{6N}q = \int_{\Omega_t} d^{6N}q^t, \quad (1.1)$$

which can be viewed just as trivial renaming of the integration variables. Next, let us consider the theorem about substitution of variables ([find out proper mathematical terminology](#)), which states:

- 1) Let ϕ be a regular one-to-one mapping from \mathbb{R}_N to \mathbb{R}_N defined on an open set $G \subset \mathbb{R}_N$;
- 2) let $M \subset \phi(G) \subset \mathbb{R}_N$;
- 3) let f be a mapping $\mathbb{R}_N \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_1$ defined ([skoro vsude](#)) on M .

Then,

$$\int_M f(y)dy = \int_{\phi^{-1}(M)} f(\phi(x)) \left| \det \frac{D\phi}{Dx} \right| dx. \quad (1.2)$$

We will apply (1.2) to the right-hand side of equation (1.1) with $f \equiv 1$, $y \rightarrow q^t$, $x \rightarrow q$, $\phi(x) \rightarrow q^t(q)$, $M = \Omega_t$ and $\phi^{-1}(M) = \Omega_0$, which yields

$$\int_{\Omega_t} d^{6N}q = \int_{\Omega_t} d^{6N}q^t = \int_{\Omega_0} \left| \det \frac{Dq^t}{Dq} \right| dq. \quad (1.3)$$

Let us further denote

$$J_t \equiv \left| \det \frac{Dq^t}{Dq} \right|, \quad (1.4)$$

which is the Jacobian of the transformation $q \rightarrow q^t$. Apparently, the Liouville's theorem is valid provided $J_t = 1$. In practise, we will show that $dJ_t/dt = 0$ which, together with trivial identity $J_0 \equiv J_{t=0} = 1$, implies the required property of the Jacobian. Let

we denote element of the Jacobi matrix $J_{ij} \equiv \partial q_i^t / \partial q_j$. Its time derivative may be expressed as

$$\frac{dJ_{ij}}{dt} = \frac{\partial \dot{q}_i^t}{q_j} = \sum_K \frac{\partial \dot{q}_i^t}{\partial q_k^t} \frac{\partial q_k^t}{\partial q_j}, \quad (1.5)$$

where we denote $\dot{q}_i^t \equiv dq_i^t/dt$. In equation 1.5 we have exchanged order of derivatives with respect to t and q_j which is possible provided these two are continuous. Time derivative of the Jacobian J_t can be written with help of eq. 1.5:

$$\frac{dJ}{dt} = \sum_{i,j} \frac{\partial J}{\partial J_{ij}} \frac{dJ_{ij}}{dt} = \sum_{i,j,k} \frac{\partial J}{\partial J_{ij}} J_{kj} \frac{\partial \dot{q}_i^t}{\partial q_k^t}. \quad (1.6)$$

Equation (1.6) can be simplified due to identity (see Box ??)

$$\sum_j \frac{\partial J}{\partial J_{ij}} J_{kj} = \delta_{ik} J \quad (1.7)$$

to

$$\frac{dJ}{dt} = J \sum_i \frac{\partial \dot{q}_i^t}{\partial q_i^t}. \quad (1.8)$$

Finally, let us rewrite (1.8) in terms of canonical coordinates and momenta and consider Hamilton's equations to evaluate \dot{r}_i^t and \dot{p}_i^t :

$$\frac{dJ}{dt} = J \sum_{i=1}^{3N} \left(\frac{\partial \dot{r}_i^t}{\partial r_i^t} + \frac{\partial \dot{p}_i^t}{\partial p_i^t} \right) = J \sum_{i=1}^{3N} \left(\frac{\partial^2 H}{\partial r_i^t \partial p_i^t} - \frac{\partial^2 H}{\partial p_i^t \partial r_i^t} \right) \quad (1.9)$$

1.2 Statistical description of a physical system

Probability density is constant along each state evolutionary track through the phase space, i.e. each particular state keeps in time its probability of being realised (found / measured). This, together with an assumptions required for the Liouville's theorem to be valid (i.e. Hamiltonian nature of the system) allows to formulate a Liouville equation for temporal evolution of the distribution function D_N .

Let's assume an arbitrary *fixed* subset, Ω , of the phase space. Probability to find the system in some state in Ω is $P(\Omega) = \int_{\Omega} D_N d\omega$. Liouville's theorem states that the fluid of states is incompressible, hence, the only way how the probability $P(\Omega)$ can change is due to flow of the states through the boundary of Ω , i.e.:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int_{\Omega} D_N d\omega = - \oint_{\partial\Omega} D_N \dot{\mathbf{q}} \cdot d\mathbf{\Sigma} \quad (1.10)$$

where $d\mathbf{\Sigma}$ is an (outward) oriented element of the surface $\partial\Omega$. The minus sign means that the probability decreases when the state flows parallel to $d\mathbf{\Sigma}$, i.e. out from Ω . Provided some physically plausible mathematical conditions are fulfilled (**provide an exact formulation of these conditions**), we may exchange derivative and integration

operators on the left-hand side of eq. (1.10); on the right-hand side, we apply Gauss theorem, yielding

$$\int_{\Omega} \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial t} d\omega = - \int_{\Omega} \nabla \cdot (D_N \dot{\mathbf{q}}) d\omega . \quad (1.11)$$

Integral equality (1.11) holds for an arbitrary set Ω which implies equality of integrands. Therefore, we obtain a continuity equation for the distribution function,

$$\frac{\partial D_N}{\partial t} = - \nabla \cdot (D_N \dot{\mathbf{q}}) , \quad (1.12)$$

which can be further rewritten as

$$\frac{\partial D_N}{\partial t} = - \sum_{i=1}^{6N} \left[\frac{\partial D_N}{\partial q_i} \dot{q}_i + D_N \frac{\partial \dot{q}_i}{\partial q_i} \right] = - \sum_{i=1}^{3N} \left[\frac{\partial D_N}{\partial r_i} \frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial p_i} - \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial p_i} \frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial r_i} + D_N \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial r_i \partial p_i} - \frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial p_i \partial r_i} \right) \right] . \quad (1.13)$$

The terms in () brackets cancel out provided H is continuously differentiable with respect to r_i and p_i . Using the Poisson brackets notation, the Liouville equation is usually written as:

$$\frac{\partial D_N}{\partial t} = \{ \mathcal{H}, D_N \}_P . \quad (1.14)$$

(Mention the analogous von Neumann equation from the quantum theory.)

1.3 Reduced distribution functions

Distribution function, D_N holds a maximum information of a particular (usually very complex) physical system. This maximum information may often be more than what we need. In some circumstances, it is convenient to define reduced distribution functions:

$$f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) \equiv \int D_N(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{p}_2, \dots, \mathbf{r}_N, \mathbf{p}_N) d\tau_{N-1} , \quad (1.15)$$

where

$$d\tau_{N-1} \equiv \frac{d^3 \mathbf{r}_2 d^3 \mathbf{p}_2 \dots d^3 \mathbf{r}_N d^3 \mathbf{p}_N}{(N-1)!} \quad (1.16)$$

and the integration is taken over the whole definition space of variables $\mathbf{r}_2 \dots \mathbf{p}_N$. Definition (1.15) generally gives different results when different pairs $(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i)$ are excluded from integration (which means that the result should keep some mark according to the excluded particle). The definition (1.15), however, is usually considered for specific systems of *undistinguishable* particles which imply that D_N as well as \mathcal{H} are symmetric with respect to permutations of individual particles (exchange of pairs of $(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i)$ and $(\mathbf{r}_j, \mathbf{p}_j)$). For these systems, integration (1.15) gives identical functions regardless of over which $N-1$ pairs of coordinates and momenta it is performed. Function $f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p})$ is usually called single-particle distribution function and it gives a probability density of finding *any* particle at position \mathbf{r} with momentum \mathbf{p} . Note that the single-particle distribution function really holds considerably reduced information with respect to D_N . We

could add that to the meaning of $f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p})$ that “. . . and we have no information about positions and momenta of the other particles.” Single-particle distribution function holds sufficient amount of information to calculate mean values of physical quantities which may be written in a form:

$$A(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{p}_1, \dots, \mathbf{r}_N, \mathbf{p}_N) = \sum_{i=1}^N a(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i), \quad (1.17)$$

i.e. it is a sum of N identical functions. The mean value is then

$$\langle A \rangle \equiv \int A D_N d\tau_N = \int a(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) d\mathbf{r} d\mathbf{p}. \quad (1.18)$$

Similarly to (1.15) we may define “two-particle distribution function,”

$$f_2(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{p}_2) \equiv \int D_N d\tau_{N-2}, \quad (1.19)$$

which gives the probability density of finding *some* particle at position \mathbf{r}_1 with momentum \mathbf{p}_1 and *any other* particle at position \mathbf{r}_2 with momentum \mathbf{p}_2 . Mean values of physical quantities which depend on combinations of positions and momenta of two particles,

$$B(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{p}_1, \dots, \mathbf{r}_N, \mathbf{p}_N) = \sum_{i,j} b(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i, \mathbf{r}_j, \mathbf{p}_j), \quad (1.20)$$

can be calculated through integration of the two-particle distribution function:

$$\langle B \rangle = \int b(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{p}_2) f_2(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{p}_2) d\mathbf{r}_1 d\mathbf{p}_1 d\mathbf{r}_2 d\mathbf{p}_2. \quad (1.21)$$

(Be more precise in definition (1.19) in terms of limits of i and j which is related to presence (or not) of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ in (1.21).)

An important example of physical quantity which often takes the form of (1.17) or (1.20) or combination of both is total energy of the system which is defined by Hamiltonian. Let's introduce its specific (i.e. not general!) form:

$$\mathcal{H} = \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{\mathbf{p}_i^2}{2m} + \sum_{i=1}^N V(\mathbf{r}_i) + \sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq i}}^N w(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{r}_j). \quad (1.22)$$

Here, first sum corresponds to system of free particles; first plus second sum defines a system of non-interacting particles (of equal mass, m , which is an inevitable consequence of their undistinguishability) in external potential $V(\mathbf{r})$. The third term is a possible form of interaction term. The mean value of energy of the statistically described system determined by Hamiltonian (1.22) is

$$\langle \mathcal{H} \rangle = \int h(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) d^3\mathbf{r} d^3\mathbf{p} + \int w(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2) f_2(\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{p}_2) d^3\mathbf{r}_1 d^3\mathbf{p}_1 d^3\mathbf{r}_2 d^3\mathbf{p}_2, \quad (1.23)$$

where we denote

$$h(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) \equiv \frac{p^2}{2m} + V(\mathbf{r}) . \quad (1.24)$$

In the following, we will use a particular example of the interaction term which describes mutual gravitational interaction among particles:

$$w(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{r}_j) = -\frac{Gm^2}{|\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{r}_j|} \quad (1.25)$$

with G representing the gravitational constant.

1.4 Boltzmann equation

Similarly to the Liouville's equation (1.14) which defines evolution of the N-particle distribution function, D_N , we may derive a partial differential equation for evolution of the single-particle distribution function, $f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p})$. The procedure lies in integration of (1.14) over the whole definition space of positions and momenta of all, but one particles. More precisely, let's define $\mathbf{r} \equiv \mathbf{r}_1$ and $\mathbf{p} \equiv \mathbf{p}_1$ and perform the integration over all coordinates and momenta except for \mathbf{r} and \mathbf{p} :

$$\int \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial t} d\tau_{N-1} = \int \sum_{i=1}^N \left(\frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{p}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{r}_i} - \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{r}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{p}_i} \right) d\tau_{N-1} + \int \sum_{i,j} \frac{\partial w(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{r}_j)}{\partial \mathbf{r}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{p}_i} d\tau_{N-1} . \quad (1.26)$$

Let's first consider the left-hand side of equation (1.26). Provided the conditions of a thorem of derivation of integral with respect to parameter are fulfilled (**put them down explicitly here?**), we may write

$$\int \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial t} d\tau_{N-1} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int D_N d\tau_{N-1} = \frac{\partial f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p})}{\partial t} . \quad (1.27)$$

Considering the second term in (1.26), we first split it into three parts ($i = 1$, $i = 2$ and $i > 2$):

$$\begin{aligned} \int \sum_{i=1}^N \left(\frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{p}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{r}_i} - \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{r}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{p}_i} \right) d\tau_{N-1} &= \int \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{p}} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{r}} d\tau_{N-1} - \int \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{p}} d\tau_{N-1} + \\ &\int \left(\frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{p}_2} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{r}_2} - \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{r}_2} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{p}_2} \right) d\tau_{N-1} + \\ &\int \sum_{i=3}^N \left(\frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{p}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{r}_i} - \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{r}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{p}_i} \right) d\tau_{N-1} . \end{aligned} \quad (1.28)$$

The specific and very important property of the first two terms on the right-hand side of eq. (1.28) is that (i) h is function of just \mathbf{r} and \mathbf{p} and (ii) the partial derivation is

with respect to these quantities over which we do not integrate. Hence, we may put the terms $\partial h/\partial \mathbf{r}$ and $\partial h/\partial \mathbf{p}$ out of the integrals and, under the assumptions of derivative of integral with respect to a parameter, we may write:

$$\int \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{p}} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{r}} d\tau_{N-1} - \int \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{p}} d\tau_{N-1} = \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{p}} - \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{p}} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{r}}. \quad (1.29)$$

Finally, we will show that the second (and analogically any addent in the subsequent sum) is zero. Let's reorganise the differentials in $d\tau_{N-1}$ and evaluate a sub-integral

$$I_1 \equiv \int \int \left(\frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{p}_2} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{r}_2} - \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{r}_2} \cdot \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{p}_2} \right) d^3 \mathbf{r}_2 d^3 \mathbf{p}_2. \quad (1.30)$$

Performing integration per partes with respect to variable \mathbf{p}_2 and \mathbf{r}_2 in the first and second term, respectively, we will get

$$\begin{aligned} I_1 = & \int \left[D_N \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{r}_2} \right]_{\mathbf{p}_2 \rightarrow \infty} d^3 \mathbf{r}_2 - \int \int D_N \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{r}_2} \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{p}_2} d^3 \mathbf{r}_2 d^3 \mathbf{p}_2 - \\ & \int \left[D_N \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{p}_2} \right]_{\mathbf{r}_2 \rightarrow \infty} d^3 \mathbf{p}_2 + \int \int D_N \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{p}_2} \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{r}_2} d^3 \mathbf{r}_2 d^3 \mathbf{p}_2 \end{aligned} \quad (1.31)$$

the notation of individual terms in (1.31) has to be taken somewhat fuzzy. More precisely, one should perform the integration over components of vectors \mathbf{r}_2 and \mathbf{p}_2 . In the first and third term on the right-hand side of (1.31), the argument of squared brackets is to be evaluated in appropriate infinity. Hence, these terms are both zero as D_N goes to zero at infinity which is a necessary condition for the normalisation (??) to be fulfilled. The second and fourth term in (1.31) cancel out provided the function $h(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p})$ is smoothly differentiable with respect to both arguments (which is a condition for possible exchange of the order of differentiation).

As mentioned above, each individual part of the sum in the third right-hand side term of eq. (1.28) gives zero after the manipulation analogical to that presented above. Equation (1.26) then reduces to

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{p}} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{r}} - \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{p}} = \int \sum_{i,j} \frac{\partial w(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{r}_j)}{\partial \mathbf{r}_i} \cdot \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{p}_i} d\tau_{N-1}. \quad (1.32)$$

The right-hand term of eq. (1.32) could be simplified, using a procedure similar to that presented above. It can be easily shown that only $N-1$ terms with $i=1$ are non-zero and they are all identical due to symmetries of D_N . With an alternate notation $\mathbf{r}' \equiv \mathbf{r}_2$ and $\mathbf{p}' \equiv \mathbf{p}_2$ we write

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{p}} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{r}} - \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{p}} &= (N-1) \int \frac{\partial w(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}')}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{p}} \frac{d^3 \mathbf{r}' d^3 \mathbf{p}' d^3 \mathbf{r}_3 d^3 \mathbf{p}_3 \dots d^3 \mathbf{r}_N d^3 \mathbf{p}_N}{(N-1)!} \\ &= \int \frac{\partial w(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}')}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \frac{\partial D_N}{\partial \mathbf{p}} d^3 \mathbf{r}' d^3 \mathbf{p}' d\tau_{N-2} \\ &= \int \frac{\partial w(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{r}')}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \frac{\partial f_2(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{r}', \mathbf{p}')}{\partial \mathbf{p}} d^3 \mathbf{r}' d^3 \mathbf{p}'. \end{aligned} \quad (1.33)$$

In the last step we, again, assumed possibility to exchange order of integration and differentiation with respect to \mathbf{p} . The right-hand side of eq. (1.33) covers mutual interaction of the particles and is usually called the collision term, being denoted as $(\partial f/\partial t)_{\text{coll}}$. Using the Hamilton canonical equations, we may write one of several “standard” forms of *Boltzmann equation*:

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \dot{\mathbf{r}} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{r}} + \dot{\mathbf{p}} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{p}} = \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} \right)_{\text{coll}} . \quad (1.34)$$

Keep in mind that this is just a notation and the collision term still involves integral of two-body distribution function. This is a principal problem which makes it impossible to solve the equation. There are several ways how to overcome this obstacle.

1.4.1 BBGKY hierarchy

Deriving partial differential equation for two-body distribution function, f_2 , in a similar way, i.e. integrating the Liouville equation over $6(N - 2)$ variables may seem to be a straightforward way how to make the system of equations closed. Unfortunately, the problem would reappear – in the equation for f_2 we would obtain an integral term including three-body distribution function. The procedure may be repeated again and again, leading to a closed set of $N - 1$ equations. This set is called the BBGKY hierarchy (after scientists who independently studied this problem: Bogolyubov, Born, Green, Kirkwood and Yvon) but in its completeness, it is no more suitable for solving than the Liouville equation.

A general class of approximations with an intent to make a smaller set of equations closed lies in assumption that the higher-order distribution function can be written as a combination of lower-order distribution functions, e.g. $f_2(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{r}', \mathbf{p}') = f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) f(\mathbf{r}', \mathbf{p}')$.

1.4.2 Vlasov approximation

The simplest, above presented approximation is, actually, often used and is the basis of the Vlasov equation. Let’s start without the approximation and rewrite f_2 in a following way:

$$f_2(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{r}', \mathbf{p}') = f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) f(\mathbf{r}', \mathbf{p}') + g_2(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{r}', \mathbf{p}') . \quad (1.35)$$

The first term on the right hand side of formula (1.35), a product of two single particle distribution functions, represents probability density of two uncorrelated events (finding one particle at position \mathbf{r} with momentum \mathbf{p} and another one at position \mathbf{r}' and momentum \mathbf{p}'). Function g_2 is then a correlation function which gives the probability density of finding one particle at position \mathbf{r} and momentum \mathbf{p} *due to* finding another particle at position \mathbf{r}' and momentum \mathbf{p}' and vice versa.

(Describe transition from \mathbf{p} to \mathbf{v} .)

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{r}} - \nabla (V(\mathbf{r}) + \langle \Phi(\mathbf{r}) \rangle) \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{v}} = 0 \quad (1.36)$$

(We may define Φ as the mean value, i.e. drop the sign $\langle \rangle$ from eq. 1.36.)

1.4.3 Fokker-Planck approximation

1.5 Fluid equations

Some variant of Boltzmann or Vlasov equation appears to be suitable for solving various physical systems. Nevertheless, in other cases it is either too difficult, or unnecessary to consider all information held by the distribution function. Fluid equations, which subsequently allow various heuristic modifications are quite commonly used. Usually, they are derived from the Vlasov equation in the form (1.36).

The basic quantities which stand in the fluid equations are defined as various, linearly independent moments of the single-particle distribution function:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \rho \\ \rho \mathbf{u} \\ \rho \mathcal{E} \end{pmatrix} \equiv \int \begin{pmatrix} m \\ m \mathbf{v} \\ \frac{1}{2} m |\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{u}|^2 \end{pmatrix} f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{v}) d^3 \mathbf{v} . \quad (1.37)$$

The quantities ρ , \mathbf{u} and \mathcal{E} are mean values of density, velocity and specific (per unit mass and unit volume) internal energy of the statistically described system. They are functions of position and time, but we have dropped the dependency on velocity \mathbf{v} .

The fluid equations are obtained by multiplying of Boltzmann or Vlasov equation by m , \mathbf{v} and $\frac{1}{2} m \mathcal{E}$ and subsequent integration over the velocity space. They are sometimes called moments (momenta?) of the Boltzmann/Vlasov equation.

1.5.1 Continuity equation

The simplest to derive is continuity equation which starts from

$$\int m \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} d^3 \mathbf{v} + \int m \mathbf{v} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{r}} d^3 \mathbf{v} - \int m \nabla [V(\mathbf{r}) + \Phi(\mathbf{r})] \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{v}} d^3 \mathbf{v} = 0 . \quad (1.38)$$

Under certain assumptions on the form of $f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{v})$, we may exchange the order of integration and derivation with respect to t and \mathbf{r} in the first and second term, respectively. In the last term, we may put all but the $\partial f / \partial \mathbf{v}$ term out of the integral:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int m f d^3 \mathbf{v} + \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \int m \mathbf{v} d^3 \mathbf{v} - m \nabla [V(\mathbf{r}) + \Phi(\mathbf{r})] \cdot \int \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{v}} d^3 \mathbf{v} = 0 . \quad (1.39)$$

First two integrals are by definition ρ and $\rho \mathbf{u}$, the third integral evaluates to $f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{v})$ in infinity which is zero due to the normalisation condition. Hence, the zeroth moment of the Boltzmann/Vlasov equation reads:

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{u}) = 0 . \quad (1.40)$$

1.5.2 Euler equation

First moment of the Vlasov equation is sometimes called Euler equation or fluid equation of motion. It is a vector equation and for the sake of better clarity, we will write it in an index notation, using the Einstein summation convention:

$$\int m v_i \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} d^3 \mathbf{v} + \int m v_i v_j \frac{\partial f}{\partial r_j} d^3 \mathbf{v} - \int m v_i \frac{\partial}{\partial r_j} [V(\mathbf{r}) + \Phi(\mathbf{r})] \frac{\partial f}{\partial v_j} d^3 \mathbf{v} = 0. \quad (1.41)$$

Let's assume that derivation with respect to t and r_j may be exchanged with integration over the velocity space. We will get

$$\frac{\partial \rho u_i}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial}{\partial r_j} (\rho \langle v_i v_j \rangle) - m \frac{\partial}{\partial r_j} [V(\mathbf{r}) + \Phi(\mathbf{r})] \int v_i \frac{\partial f}{\partial v_j} d^3 \mathbf{v} = 0, \quad (1.42)$$

where for arbitrary function \mathcal{X} we denote $\rho \langle \mathcal{X} \rangle \equiv \int m \mathcal{X} f d^3 \mathbf{v}$. It can be easily shown (e.g. by means of integration per partes) that

$$\int m v_i \frac{\partial f}{\partial v_j} d^3 \mathbf{v} = -\rho \delta_{ij} \quad (1.43)$$

and

$$\langle v_i v_j \rangle = u_i u_j + \langle w_i w_j \rangle, \quad (1.44)$$

where $w_i \equiv v_i - u_i$ represents "random" deviations of particles' motion from the mean bulk velocity. The symmetric tensor $\rho \langle w_i w_j \rangle$ can be split into its trace, $P \equiv \frac{1}{3} \rho \langle |\mathbf{w}|^2 \rangle$, and traceless tensor $\pi_{ij} \equiv \rho \langle \frac{1}{3} |\mathbf{w}|^2 \delta_{ij} - w_i w_j \rangle$. The newly introduced quantities P and π_{ij} are called pressure and stress tensor, respectively. Using them, we can rewrite Euler equation to the form

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\rho u_i) + \frac{\partial}{\partial r_j} (\rho u_i u_j + P \delta_{ij} - \pi_{ij}) = -\rho \frac{\partial}{\partial r_i} (V(\mathbf{r}) + \Phi(\mathbf{r})) \quad (1.45)$$

and with further small alterations we obtain

$$u_i \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + u_i \frac{\partial}{\partial r_j} (\rho u_j) + \rho \frac{\partial u_i}{\partial t} + \rho u_j \frac{\partial u_i}{\partial r_j} = -\rho \frac{\partial}{\partial r_i} (V(\mathbf{r}) + \Phi(\mathbf{r})) - \frac{\partial P}{\partial r_i} + \frac{\partial \pi_{ij}}{\partial r_j}. \quad (1.46)$$

The sum of the first two terms on the left-hand side of eq. (1.46) is zero as it is the left-hand side of the continuity equation (1.40) multiplied by u_i . Hence, the standard form of the Euler equation reads:

$$\frac{\partial u_i}{\partial t} + u_j \frac{\partial u_i}{\partial r_j} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial r_i} (V(\mathbf{r}) + \Phi(\mathbf{r})) - \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial P}{\partial r_i} + \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{\partial \pi_{ij}}{\partial r_j}. \quad (1.47)$$

Let's put down also a common vector notation of the Euler equation

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{f} - \frac{1}{\rho} \nabla P + \frac{1}{\rho} \nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{\pi}, \quad (1.48)$$

where we have replaced gradient of potential by the force density \mathbf{f} . Let's put stress on meaning of the term $(\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}$, which can be inferred from comparison of eqs. (1.47) and (1.48).

1.5.3 Energy equation

Energy balance equation will be obtained multiplying eq. (1.36) with $\frac{1}{2}m|\mathbf{v}|^2$ and integrating over the velocity space. We will be more brief than in the previous two cases as the steps done are qualitatively the same. Hence, after some algebra, we will obtain

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} [\frac{1}{2}\rho(u^2 + \langle w^2 \rangle)] + \frac{\partial}{\partial r_i} [\frac{1}{2}\rho\langle (u_i + w_i)|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}|^2 \rangle] = -\rho u_i \frac{\partial}{\partial r_i} (V + \Phi), \quad (1.49)$$

where we denote $u^2 \equiv |\mathbf{u}|^2$ for the sake of brevity. Introducing the (conductive) heat flow, $\mathbf{F} \equiv \frac{1}{2}\rho\langle \mathbf{w} w^2 \rangle$ and keeping in mind that $\rho\mathcal{E} \equiv \frac{1}{2}\rho\langle w^2 \rangle \equiv \frac{3}{2}P$, we rewrite (1.49) to the form

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\frac{1}{2}\rho(u^2) + \rho\mathcal{E}) + \frac{\partial}{\partial r_i} [\frac{1}{2}\rho u^2 u_i + u_j(P\delta_{ij} - \pi_{ij}) + \rho\mathcal{E} u_i + F_i] = -\rho u_i \frac{\partial}{\partial r_i} (V + \Phi), \quad (1.50)$$

which can be further simplified by subtracting the scalar product of the Euler equation (1.45) and u_i ,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\frac{1}{2}\rho u^2) + \frac{\partial}{\partial r_i} (\frac{1}{2}\rho u^2 u_i) = -\rho u_i \frac{\partial}{\partial r_i} (V + \Phi) - u_i \frac{\partial P}{\partial r_i} + u_i \frac{\partial \pi_{ij}}{\partial r_j}, \quad (1.51)$$

yielding

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\rho\mathcal{E}) + \frac{\partial}{\partial r_i} (\rho\mathcal{E} u_i) = -P \frac{\partial u_i}{\partial r_i} - \frac{\partial F_i}{\partial r_i} + \Psi, \quad (1.52)$$

where $\Psi \equiv \pi_{ij} \partial u_i / \partial r_j$ is a local dissipation measure. Equation (1.52) can be rewritten with help of the continuity equation into vector form

$$\rho \frac{d\mathcal{E}}{dt} = -P \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} + \Psi. \quad (1.53)$$

Sometimes, there are extra terms added rather heuristically to the right-hand side of the energy balance equation, e.g. divergence of radiative heat transfer, in order to match the considered physical system. Note, however, that rigorous addition of such terms from the first principles is usually not trivial.

1.5.4 Closing the equations set

We have obtained a set of five linearly independent momentum equations,

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{u}) = 0, \quad (1.54)$$

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{f} - \frac{1}{\rho} \nabla P + \frac{1}{\rho} \nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{\pi}, \quad (1.55)$$

$$\rho \frac{d\mathcal{E}}{dt} = -P \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} - \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} + \Psi \quad (1.56)$$

for 14 independent variables, ρ , \mathbf{u} (3 components), P , $\boldsymbol{\pi}$ (5 independent components), \mathbf{F} (3 components) and Φ . Such a description of a physical problem is clearly not solvable. Hence, various approximations are used to overcome this problem.

Big simplification, just sufficient to close the problem from the mathematical point of view, is achieved for isotropic systems with $f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{v}) = f(\mathbf{r}, -\mathbf{v})$ (check correctness of this condition), which imply $\pi_{ij} = 0$ and $F_i = 0$.

Quite often, a so-called Navière-Stokes approximation is used, assuming the stress tensor to be proportional to the tensor of deformation,

$$\pi_{ij} = \mu D_{ij} = \mu \left[\frac{\partial u_i}{\partial r_j} + \frac{\partial u_j}{\partial r_i} - \frac{3}{2} \frac{\partial u_k}{\partial r_k} \delta_{ij} \right], \quad (1.57)$$

which reduces the number of independent variables by 5. The constant of proportionality, μ , is called dynamical viscosity. (Check definition of various deformation tensors and ‘definition’ of the Navière-Stokes approximation.)

Another step towards a closed set of equations may lie in heuristic introduction of temperature, T , equation of ideal gas, $P = n K_B T$ and an assumption

$$\mathbf{F} = -\kappa \nabla T. \quad (1.58)$$

With κ being a constant determining the heat conduction.¹

Finally, if an internal potential Ψ is not neglected, some variant of Poisson equation, e.g.

$$\Delta(V + \Phi) = 4\pi G \rho, \quad (1.59)$$

completes the set.

(Comment on dx/dt vs. $\partial x/\partial t$; maybe already in Sec. 1.5.1)

1.6 Thermodynamical equilibria

So far, we attempted to downscale the problem of evolution of the statistically described system to a space (much) less-dimensional than the phase space. There is, however, a good reason to describe the system in its full complexity in a specific case – when it is in a thermodynamical equilibrium. We postulate that the distribution function corresponding to the equilibrium state is the one for which the statistical entropy,

$$S(D) \equiv -K_B \text{Tr}(D \ln D), \quad (1.60)$$

reaches a maximum value. (Where to add a section on the statistical entropy? Here, or to Sec. 1.2?) For example, let’s consider a system with finite number, N , of possible states. The distribution function (probability in this case) for each state i is then $D(i) = 1/N$. Nevertheless, the definition of the equilibrium system is more general and can be applied also to statistical systems with some additional information. In particular, we usually consider a given mean value, $\langle A \rangle \equiv \text{Tr}(AD)$, of some physical quantity which can be assigned to the state of the system (i.e. measured in the real world) to play the role of the constraint on the distribution function.

¹Quite often the conductive heat flow, \mathbf{F} , is, actually, assumed to be zero or negligible but, on the other hand, radiative heat flow is considered. In such a case, equation of radiative transfer, formally similar to (1.58) is introduced with κ being an opacity.

Let's have a set of n physical quantities A_i , mean values of which are given. We are looking for the form of the distribution function which maximises value of $S(D)$ and fulfills $n + 1$ constraints $\langle A_i \rangle = \text{Tr}(A_i D)$ and $\text{Tr} D = 1$. A possible way to solve this task is via variation:

$$\delta \left\{ \frac{1}{K_B} S(D) + \sum_{i=0}^n \lambda_i [\text{Tr}(A_i D) - \langle A_i \rangle] \right\} = 0, \quad (1.61)$$

where λ_i are Lagrange multipliers and $A_0 \equiv \mathbb{1}$. Using the explicit form of A_0 and $S(D)$ equation (1.61) leads to

$$-\text{Tr}[(\ln D + \mathbb{1})\delta D] + \lambda_0 \text{Tr}(\delta D) + \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \text{Tr}(A_i \delta D) = 0, \quad (1.62)$$

which may be further rewritten as

$$-\text{Tr}[\ln(D)\delta D] + \lambda'_0 \text{Tr}(\delta D) + \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \text{Tr}(A_i \delta D) = 0, \quad (1.63)$$

where $\lambda'_0 \equiv \lambda_0 - 1$. Finally, dropping prime from λ'_0 , we obtain:

$$\text{Tr} \left[\left(-\ln D + \sum_{i=0}^n \lambda_i A_i \right) \delta D \right] = 0. \quad (1.64)$$

It can be shown (**do it!**) that, in order to fulfill relation (1.64) for arbitrary variation δD , the term in round brackets has to be zero, i.e.

$$D = \exp \left[- \sum_{i=0}^n \lambda_i A_i \right]. \quad (1.65)$$

(Where does the minus sign come from? Perhaps, we should have minus sign already in eq. 1.61.) Hence, we have an explicit form of the distribution function (functions/operators A_i are given) with $n + 1$ parameters λ_i which are related to given values of $\langle A_i \rangle$. Let us express λ_0 for convenience. First, rewrite (1.65) to

$$D = e^{-\lambda_0} \exp \left[- \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i A_i \right]. \quad (1.66)$$

Then, consider that $\langle A_0 \rangle = \text{Tr} D = 1$ and apply the operator Tr to equation (1.66) which gives

$$e^{-\lambda_0} \text{Tr} \left\{ \exp \left[- \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i A_i \right] \right\} = 1. \quad (1.67)$$

Instead of λ_0 itself, let us introduce so-called partition function (also known as partition sum):

$$Z \equiv e^{\lambda_0} = \text{Tr} \left\{ \exp \left[- \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i A_i \right] \right\}. \quad (1.68)$$

The equilibrium distribution function 1.65 can be then rewritten as

$$D = \frac{1}{Z} \exp \left[- \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i A_i \right]. \quad (1.69)$$

Partition function Z keeps a lot of information about the system. It can be easily shown that, e.g.

$$\frac{\partial \ln Z}{\partial \lambda_i} = -\langle A_i \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial^2 \ln Z}{\partial \lambda_i \partial \lambda_j} = \langle A_i A_j \rangle - \langle A_i \rangle \langle A_j \rangle. \quad (1.70)$$

Similarly, we may write relation for entropy S and the Lagrange multipliers:

$$\frac{\partial S}{\partial \langle A_i \rangle} = K_B \lambda_i. \quad (1.71)$$

(Can the equilibrium state (of isolated system) be reached starting from non-equilibrium one?)

1.6.1 Statistical ensembles

The statistical systems appear often static from a human perspective (despite microscopic motions, which are not directly observable) and this allow us to describe these systems by a set of macroscopic variables. Such systems may be described by *statistical ensembles*, which are assumed to be in a statistical equilibrium, and given various macroscopic constraints, these ensembles depend on a few observable parameters. Three important thermodynamic ensembles were defined for a fixed volume Ω .

Microcanonical ensemble is a statistical ensemble, where the total energy of the system and the number of particle in the system are known (they each have a particular fixed values). The system is totally isolated, no exchange of the energy or particles with the environment is allowed. Each member of the ensemble has the same total energy and the same total number of particles.

Canonical ensemble is a statistical ensemble, where the energy is not know exactly, but the number of particles is fixed. The canonical ensemble is suitable for description of a system, which has a heat exchange with a surrounding environment, however there is not particle exchange with the surroundings. Each member of the ensemble has the same number of particles, their energies are not defined, however there is a constraint on a mean energy (usually expressed by a temperature), which is given by the temperature of the surrounding bath.

Grandcanonical ensemble is a statistical ensemble, where neither the energy nor the particle number is fixed. Similarly to the previous case, instead of the total energy the temperature is defined, and in place of the total number of particles the chemical potential is defined. The grandcanonical ensemble is appropriate for description of open systems, which has a thermal contact with the surroundings and exchanges particles with a reservoir. For members of the grandcanonical ensemble

the temperature and the chemical potential of the reservoir places constraints to the mean energy of each member and mean number of particles.

In the following, we will use the properties of both the canonical and grandcanonical ensembles in order to derive the equilibrium particle distribution function.

1.6.2 Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution

We will derive the particle distribution function for an open system of particles. We will use the calculation for a grandcanonical ensemble. We remind for clarity that the usage of such a statistical ensemble means that we do not know exact total energy of the particles in the volume nor the total number of particles. However the constraints are given to mean values of energy and mean number of particles, these quantities are further denoted by a temperature T and a chemical potential μ . Elaborating Eq. (1.69) for this case the distribution function is given by

$$D = \frac{1}{Z_G} \exp[-\beta H + \alpha N], \quad (1.72)$$

where Z_G is a partition function of the grandcanonical ensemble and the two operators connected with the two known constraints are H , Hamiltonian as an operator of energy and N is a formal operator of number of particles. These two operators use Lagrange multipliers β , which represent the temperature and α representing the chemical potential. Note that the argument of the exponential is a hybrid function, because the hamiltonian H is continuous, whereas the operator of number of particles N is discrete.

The grandcanonical partition function may be written using its canonical counterpart Z_C

$$Z_G = \sum_{N=0}^{\infty} e^{\alpha N} Z_C(\beta, N), \quad (1.73)$$

which basically say that the partition function (also termed as *sum over states*) simply is a sum of partition functions of the canonical ensembles with fixed number of particles N with a given temperature hidden in β .

For a hamiltonian H_N of N noninteracting particles in the external potential $V(\mathbf{r})$ given by

$$H_N = \sum_i H_1(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i), \quad (1.74)$$

where

$$H_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) = p^2/(2m) + V(\mathbf{r}) \quad (1.75)$$

is a hamiltonian of one particle in the external potential, we may write the canonical partition function as

$$Z_C = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \exp[-\beta H_N] d\tau_N, \quad (1.76)$$

where $d\tau_N$ has a usual meaning

$$d\tau_N = \frac{d^3\mathbf{r}_1 d^3\mathbf{p}_1 \dots d^3\mathbf{r}_N d^3\mathbf{p}_N}{\hbar^{3N} N!}. \quad (1.77)$$

Turning the sum over N particles into a multiplication (it is possible because the functions H_1 are the same) we obtain

$$Z_C = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \prod_{i=1}^N \left(e^{-\beta p_i^2/(2m)} e^{-\beta V(\mathbf{r}_i)} d^3\mathbf{r}_i d^3\mathbf{p}_i \right) \frac{1}{\hbar^{3N} N!}. \quad (1.78)$$

Thanks to the unification of the description of the energy we may perform intergrations both over the positions and momenta. The integration over the momenta is simpler, as it is in fact an Euler integral $\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \exp(-x^2) = \sqrt{\pi}$. The intergration in the spatial domain requires a bit of the justification.

In order to be able to perform the integration in the spatial domain, we must define the external potential V . To keep things simple, we would require an integrable potential, which is zero outside the region of interest (outside our volume Ω , where we study the problem), and which has some value inside Ω . It is easy to show that the potential well will have exactly those properties. Then the integration of \mathbf{r} leads to a scaled volume of our region of interest. Hence we have

$$Z_C = \frac{1}{\hbar^{3N} N!} (2\pi m K_B T)^{3/2} \Omega^N \Xi^N \equiv \frac{Z_1^N}{\hbar^{3N} N!}. \quad (1.79)$$

By choosing the potential V in a form of a infinite potential well (i.e. $V(\mathbf{r}) = 0$ for $\mathbf{r} \in \Omega$ and $V(\mathbf{r}) = -\infty$ for $\mathbf{r} \notin \Omega$) we set $\Xi = 1$ and the integration of the spatial part in (1.78) exactly leads to the volume of the region of interest. Beware of a conflicting notation, when Ω means both the regions of interest and the volume of this region. Further note that we defined a particle partition function $Z_1(\beta) \equiv Z_C(\beta, N = 1)$.

In the following, we will apply the above discussed approximation of the infinite potential well. By combining (1.73) and (1.79) we have

$$Z_G = \sum_{N=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{N!} \left[e^{\alpha} \frac{\Omega}{\hbar^3} (2\pi m K_B T)^{3N/2} \right]^N = \exp \left[e^{\alpha} \frac{\Omega}{\hbar^3} (2\pi m K_B T)^{3/2} \right] \equiv \exp [e^{\alpha} Z_1], \quad (1.80)$$

where we used the Taylor expansion of the exponential function.

Now we search for a probability of finding a particle in spatial point \mathbf{r} with a momentum of \mathbf{p} . The procedure is somewhat complicated, because we don't know the exact number of particles in our open system. The sought probability f^2 is however

²Let us take a short excursion to the past chapters. The notation $f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p})$ was already used when we discussed the reduced distribution functions of N particles – see eq. (1.15). The question is what is the relation of (1.15) to (1.81). We need to keep in mind that in the past chapters our ensemble consisted of fixed number of particles. Therefore strictly speaking, for the previous case $\mathcal{P}(N) = 1$ and the first sum disappears. Then the two f s have the same meaning.

given by

$$f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) \equiv \sum_{N=0}^{\infty} \left[\mathcal{P}(N) \sum_{i=1}^N \mathcal{P}_N(i, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) \right], \quad (1.81)$$

where $\mathcal{P}(N)$ evaluates the probability that there is exactly N particles in the ensemble and $\mathcal{P}_N(i, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p})$ indicates the probability that i -th particle (from fixed number of N particles) can be found around coordinates (\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) in the phase space. $\mathcal{P}(N)$ may be intuitively written as a trace of the full-system distribution function D from (1.72):

$$\mathcal{P}(N) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} D d\tau_N = \frac{e^{\alpha N} Z_C(\beta, N)}{Z_G(\alpha, \beta)}. \quad (1.82)$$

Further \mathcal{P}_N is simply defined for 1-particle probability (probability of finding particle carrying flag 1 on phase coordinates (\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p})) by

$$\mathcal{P}_N(1, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} D_N \frac{d\mathbf{r}_2 d\mathbf{p}_2 \dots d\mathbf{r}_N d\mathbf{p}_N}{\hbar^{3N} N!} = \frac{1}{N\hbar^3} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} D_N d\tau_{N-1} \quad (1.83)$$

where $D_N = e^{-\beta H_N} / Z_C(\beta, N)$ is the distribution function for the canonical ensemble. We further use (1.79) to have

$$\mathcal{P}_N(1, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) = \frac{1}{N\hbar^3} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{e^{-\beta H_N}}{\frac{1}{\hbar^{3N} N!} Z_1^N(\beta)} = \frac{1}{N\hbar^3} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\hbar^{3N} N(N-1)! e^{-\beta H_N}}{Z_1^N(\beta)} = \frac{\hbar^{3N} e^{-\beta H_1}}{\hbar^3 Z_1}. \quad (1.84)$$

The 1-particle hamiltonian H_1 is defined by (1.75).

Then (1.81) takes a form of

$$f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) = \sum_{N=0}^{\infty} \frac{e^{\alpha N} Z_C(\beta, N)}{Z_G(\beta, \alpha)} N \frac{\hbar^{3N} e^{-\beta H_1}}{\hbar^3 Z_1}, \quad (1.85)$$

where the second sum over i in (1.81) was turned into a multiplication by N , as we have N undistinguishable particles. We further elaborate (1.85) by using (1.79) and by moving terms not depending on N to the front of the sum to obtain:

$$f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) = \frac{1}{\hbar^3 Z_G} \sum_{N=0}^{\infty} \frac{e^{\alpha N} Z_1^N}{\hbar^{3N} N!} N \frac{\hbar^{3N} e^{-\beta H_1}}{Z_1} = \frac{e^{\alpha} e^{-\beta H_1}}{\hbar^3} \frac{\sum_{N=1}^{\infty} \frac{e^{\alpha(N-1)} Z_1^{N-1}}{(N-1)!}}{\exp[e^{\alpha} Z_1]}, \quad (1.86)$$

where used (1.80) and realised that the summation index N must start from 1 instead of the original 0, because the the expression $(N-1)!$ is not defined for $N=0$. Now we realise that the sum in the numerator is the Taylor expansion of the denominator and hence finally

$$f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) = \frac{e^{\alpha - \beta H_1(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p})}}{\hbar^3}. \quad (1.87)$$

Now we use the fact that the mean values of physical quantities may be expressed from the partition function (1.70):

$$\langle N \rangle = \frac{\partial \ln Z_G}{\partial \alpha} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} e^\alpha Z_1 = e^\alpha Z_1 \quad (1.88)$$

and our previous finding that $\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \exp[-\beta V(\mathbf{r})] = \Omega$ to finally have

$$\begin{aligned} f'(\mathbf{p}) &= \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) d^3 \mathbf{r} = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} d^3 \mathbf{r} \frac{1}{\hbar^3} e^\alpha \exp [p^2/(2m) + V(\mathbf{r})] = \\ &= \frac{\Omega}{\hbar^3} \exp \left[\alpha - \beta \frac{p^2}{2m} \right] = \langle N \rangle g(\mathbf{p}). \end{aligned} \quad (1.89)$$

Function $g(\mathbf{p})$ is what is our final solution to the problem and is usually termed the *Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution function*. Explicitly written by using (1.88) and (1.79) we have

$$g(\mathbf{p}) = \frac{\Omega}{\hbar^3} e^{-\frac{\beta p^2}{2m}} \frac{1}{Z_1} = \frac{e^{-\beta p^2/2m}}{(2\pi K_B m T)^{3/2}}. \quad (1.90)$$

1.6.3 Chemical equilibrium, Saha's equation

Let's consider a system of three different kinds of particles – free electrons and protons and neutral hydrogen atoms. Let's define the system by a simple hamiltonian

$$H = \sum_{i=1}^{N^e} H_1^e(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i) + \sum_{i=1}^{N^p} H_1^p(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i) + \sum_{i=1}^{N^H} H_1^H(\mathbf{r}_i, \mathbf{p}_i) \quad (1.91)$$

with

$$H_1^a(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{p}) = \frac{p^2}{2m^a} + V(\mathbf{r}) + h_1^a, \quad a = \{e, p, H\}. \quad (1.92)$$

Hamiltonians h_1^a correspond to internal degrees of freedom and we will assume them to have a discrete spectrum. Partition function of this grandcanonical ensemble can be written in the form

$$Z_G(\beta, \mu^e, \mu^p, \mu^H) = \prod_a \{ \text{Tr} [\exp(\beta \mu^a N^a)] \text{Tr} [\exp(-\beta H^a)] \}. \quad (1.93)$$

Partition function of a canonical ensemble of N^a particles of the species a reads:

$$\begin{aligned} Z_C^a(\beta, N^a) &= \frac{1}{N^a!} \left(\int \exp \left[-\beta \left(\frac{p^2}{2m^a} + V(\mathbf{r}) \right) \right] \frac{d^3 \mathbf{r} d^3 \mathbf{p}}{\hbar^3} \right)^{N^a} (\text{Tr} \{ \exp(-\beta h_1^a) \})^{N^a} \\ &= \frac{1}{N^a!} \left[\frac{1}{\hbar^3} (2\pi m^a K_B T)^{3/2} \Omega \zeta^a(T) \right]^{N^a} = \frac{1}{N^a!} [Z_1^a \zeta^a(T)]^{N^a}, \end{aligned} \quad (1.94)$$

where

$$\Omega \equiv \int \exp[-\beta V(\mathbf{r})] d^3 \mathbf{r}, \quad (1.95)$$

is the fixed volume of the configuration space accessible to the particles (i.e. we assume $V(\mathbf{r})$ to represent an infinitely deep potential well) and

$$\zeta^a(T) \equiv \text{Tr}\{\exp(-\beta h_1^a)\} = \sum d_i^a \exp[-\beta \mathcal{E}_i^a], \quad (1.96)$$

where d_i^a is degeneracy of the energy level \mathcal{E}_i^a . Finally, let us assume for simplicity that each type of particles has only one internal energy level,

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta^e &= d^e \exp[-\beta \mathcal{E}_0^e] \\ \zeta^p &= d^p \exp[-\beta \mathcal{E}_0^p] \\ \zeta^H &= d_0 \exp[-\beta(\mathcal{E}_0^e + \mathcal{E}_0^p - U_i)], \end{aligned} \quad (1.97)$$

where $d^e = d^p = 2$ due to spin degeneracy of free electrons and protons and d_0 denotes the degeneracy of the ground state of the hydrogen atom with (positive) ionisation energy U_i . Inserting (1.94) into (1.93) and replacing trace in the space of N^a by sum, we obtain

$$Z_G(\beta, \mu^e, \mu^p, \mu^H) = \prod_a \sum_{N^a} \frac{1}{N^a!} \left[e^{\beta \mu^a} Z_1^a \zeta^a(T) \right]^{N^a} = \prod_a \exp \left[e^{\beta \mu^a} Z_1^a \zeta^a(T) \right]. \quad (1.98)$$

This allows us to evaluate mean number of particles of species a ,

$$\langle N^a \rangle = \frac{1}{\beta} \frac{\partial Z_G}{\partial \mu^a} = \frac{(2\pi m^a K_B T)^{3/2}}{\hbar^3} \Omega \zeta^a(T) \exp \left(\frac{\mu^a}{K_B T} \right). \quad (1.99)$$

Chemical equilibrium means that the rate of the reaction $e + p \rightleftharpoons H$ is equal in both directions, which can be expressed in terms of chemical potentials,

$$\mu^e + \mu^p = \mu^H. \quad (1.100)$$

Equality (1.100) can be rewritten in more complicated way:

$$\prod_a \left[\exp \left(\frac{\mu^a}{K_B T} \right) \right]^{\nu^a} = 1, \text{ with } \nu^e = \nu^p = 1, \nu^H = -1. \quad (1.101)$$

Inserting (1.99) into (1.101) and denoting $n_a \equiv \langle N^a \rangle / \Omega$ we obtain:

$$\prod_a \left[n^a \frac{\hbar^3}{(2\pi m^a K_B T)^{3/2}} \frac{1}{\zeta^a(T)} \right]^{\nu^a} = 1 \quad (1.102)$$

which may be finally rewritten with use of (1.98), $m_H \approx m_p$ and $n_e \approx n_p$ to the so-called Saha's equation for equilibrium of ionised and neutral atoms,

$$\frac{n_e}{n_H} = \frac{4}{d_0} \frac{1}{n_e} \frac{(2\pi m^a K_B T)^{3/2}}{\hbar^3} \exp \left(-\frac{U_i}{K_B T} \right). \quad (1.103)$$

(There is a difference of factor 2π in my hand-notes; check the derivation once more.)

Chapter 2

Plasma

Plasma is being defined as a quasi-neutral gas of mixture of charged and neutral particles showing a collective behaviour. It is characterised by its density n , temperature T (which is usually bound to the width of the velocity distribution, the Maxwell velocity distribution (1.90) for the equilibrium states), and the ionisation degree (usually well described by the Saha equation (1.103)). The *collective behaviour* indicates that the electromagnetic interaction is long-range one, hence the behaviour of each particle of the ensemble influence the behaviour of all other particles¹. The *quasineutrality* indicates that on the large scales, the possible charge concentrations are efficiently shielded and thus not observable from the outside. The shielding length scale is termed a *Debye length* λ_D .

An illustrative conception of the shielding process may be described in the following model (see Fig. 2.1). In the system of charged particles, suddenly a concentration of one charge appears. There are random mechanisms that can drive such clumping. The particles of the opposite charge then cluster around this clump to remove the charge disbalance. We need to mention explicitly that the cluster of the opposite charge is not stationary. Thermal motions of particles are very large, so particles propagate through shielding region almost freely, only the electric potential of the initial charge concentration slows them down. The propagating particles spend longer time in the shielding region creating an apparent opposite charge clump.

The electric potential ϕ must follow the Poisson equation. Thus:

$$\Delta\phi = -\frac{\sigma}{\varepsilon_0}, \quad (2.1)$$

where σ is a charge density and ε_0 is a permittivity of the vacuum. Note that at the

¹The Coulomb electric interaction decreases as $1/r^2$, where r is the distance, whereas for the given solid angle (where $\Delta r/r = \text{const}$) the volume of the plasma increases as r^3 . Hence altogether the electric force does not vanish to large distances within the plasma.

(figure here)

Figure 2.1: The concept of Debye shielding.

point of the initial charge concentration the potential may diverge. The approach we use here is fully justified for scales larger than the microscopic scale, but small enough to feel the perturbation in the potential. In one-dimensional case we have

$$\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x^2} = -\frac{\sigma}{\varepsilon_0} = -\frac{e(n_i - n_e)}{\varepsilon_0}, \quad (2.2)$$

where e is an electron charge and n_i and n_e are ion and electron number densities respectively. The charge introduces an electric field $V = -e\phi$. Assuming the equilibrium, the charges organise according to the Boltzmann distribution

$$n = n_0 \exp\left[-\frac{V}{K_B T}\right], \quad (2.3)$$

where K_B is the Boltzmann constant and T is the temperature of the gas. We will solve² the density distribution for electrons only, assuming that the other charges are caused by much heavier ions. Hence

$$n_e = n_0 \exp\left[\frac{e\phi}{K_B T_e}\right], \quad (2.7)$$

which is termed Boltzmann relation and we will encounter it once more in Section 4.5.2. By using a Taylor expansion we have

$$n_e = n_0 \left(1 + \frac{e\phi}{K_B T_e}\right) \rightarrow n_e - n_0 = n_0 \frac{e\phi}{K_B T_e}. \quad (2.8)$$

Putting $n_i = n_0$ and combining (2.2) and (2.8) we have

$$\frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x^2} = n_0 \frac{e^2 \phi}{\varepsilon_0 K_B T_e}, \quad (2.9)$$

which might be solved as

$$\phi = \phi_0 e^{-\frac{x}{\lambda_D}}, \quad (2.10)$$

²We may start from assuming that the electrons are in a equilibrium state and their motion is influenced by an external potential $q\phi$. Then we integrate the distribution function

$$f(v) = A \exp\left[-\frac{\frac{1}{2}mv^2 + q\phi}{K_B T_e}\right], \quad (2.4)$$

where A is a normalisation constant, over all velocities v . The result is a total particle density depending on the external potential. We have:

$$n_e(\phi) = \int_0^\infty f(v) dv = \exp\left[-\frac{q\phi}{K_B T_e}\right] \int_0^\infty A \exp\left[-\frac{\frac{1}{2}mv^2}{K_B T_e}\right]. \quad (2.5)$$

The integral is a definition of the background density n_0 , when there is no external potential. Hence we have

$$n_e(\phi) = n_0 \exp\left[-\frac{q\phi}{K_B T_e}\right]. \quad (2.6)$$

where

$$\lambda_D \equiv \sqrt{\frac{\varepsilon_0 K_B T_e}{n_0 e^2}} \quad (2.11)$$

is the Debye length. Thus in such a system with artificially inserted ion charge the electrons will concentrate so that the inserted charge is exponentially attenuated.

Note that Debye length increases with temperature, when the thermal motions of electrons are larger and the shielding is thus less effective (the electrons are running out of the shielding region) and decreases with increasing density (the more electrons, the more is the shielding effective).

A few additional notes.

- In physics, the temperature is a measure of the width of the particle velocity distribution and usually is being expressed in Kelvins. In plasma physics, a quite often used unit expressed by the kinetic energy (in *electronvolts* eV) of the particle having the given temperature. From

$$E_k = \frac{1}{2} m \bar{v}^2 = K_B T \quad (2.12)$$

where \bar{v} is the root-mean-square velocity, we find an usefull working relation that 1eV corresponds to 11 600K.

- Plasma may have many temperatures at once. Electrons and ions may have different velocity distributions and thus different temperatures. This is due to the fact that the frequencies of ion-ion and electron-electron collisions are much higher than the frequency of ion-electron collisions. The velocity distribution of a single particle species does not have to be isotropic, e.g., when a magnetic field is present. Than the temperature of the plasma is usually higher along the field than across the field.
- Plasma densities vary over many orders in the universe. The density of 10^6 m^{-3} is the typical plasma density in the interplanetary space around the Earth, it might be many orders less in the interstellar or intergalactic space. It is around 10^8 m^{-3} in the giant molecular clouds, from which the stars are born. The plasma density in the solar photosphere is in the order of 10^{22} m^{-3} , in the solar core than 10^{31} m^{-3} . In the laboratory plasmas, the densities between 10^{20} – 10^{28} m^{-3} are considered for the experiments with the termonuclear fussion.
- Various approaches can be practically used to describe plasmas and their dynamics. The most detailed is the kinetic description using the Boltzmann equation. The dynamics of plasmas is also being described using the fluid and magnetohydrodynamic approaches. The motion of individual or testing particles is investigated using the drift description. Using some of these approaches, we may state the conditions for the plasma equilibrium, to study instabilities and conditions for the propagation, excitation and damping of waves and other oscillatory motions. We will study all these aspects in the following chapters.

- The ionisation degree may be estimated using the Saha equation (1.103). It strongly depends on the temperature. For example, for the air at the room temperature (assumed that the air is composed from nitrogen only), one get the estimate (assuming $n_0 \sim 3 \times 10^{25} \text{ m}^{-3}$, $T \sim 300 \text{ K}$, and $U_i \sim 14.5 \text{ eV}$) of the ionisation degree to be $n_i/n_0 \sim 10^{-122}$. The air in the room certainly is not a plasma.
- In practice, there are three criteria, which help to decide whether the studied system may be considered plasma:
 1. The system is much larger than the Debye length, hence the quasineutrality holds. $L \gg \lambda_D$, where L is the characteristic size of the system.
 2. Shielding is effective. The number of particles in the Debye sphere is much larger than one, $N_D \gg 1$. In case it is not, the studied system is probably a bound system.
 3. The particle interactions are dominated by electromagnetic forces and not by collisions. $\omega\tau > 1$, where ω is a characteristic oscillation frequency of plasma and τ is a characteristic time between particle collisions. For example an exhaust of the jet engine can't be considered plasma despite the huge temperature and high ionisation, because the particle interactions are purely collisional and electromagnetic forces play negligible role.

Chapter 3

Charged particle motion in electromagnetic fields

In plasma, we sometimes have to consider motions of each single particle to capture some of the effects. The densities of plasmas are not large enough to be allowed to completely ignore the motions of individual particles. The plasmas usually are not dominated by collisions. Hence motions of individual particles play an important role. In this approach we study the motion of test particle in the *prescribed* electric and magnetic fields. In general, the trajectory of such motion may be unambiguously found by solving the equation of motion

$$m \frac{d\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}, t)}{dt} = q [\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t) + \mathbf{v}(\mathbf{r}, t) \times \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}, t)], \quad (3.1)$$

In the following sections we will discuss some examples by giving particular analytical forms to background fields $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t)$ and $\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}, t)$. We will derive the relations for some *drifts*, thus systematic motion of charged particles which are not captured when we use other approaches to study plasmas. It is important to study drifts of particles because these drifts often drive instabilities, which is crucial e.g. for laboratory plasma in plasma confinement and thermonuclear fusion.

3.1 Homogeneous magnetic field

Let us define the system with constant homogeneous magnetic field and no electric field, where we define Cartesian coordinate system so that the z axis is parallel to the direction of magnetic induction. Then we have the vector equation of motion in a form of

$$m \frac{d}{dt} \begin{pmatrix} v_x \\ v_y \\ v_z \end{pmatrix} = q \left[\begin{pmatrix} v_x \\ v_y \\ v_z \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ B \end{pmatrix} \right], \quad (3.2)$$

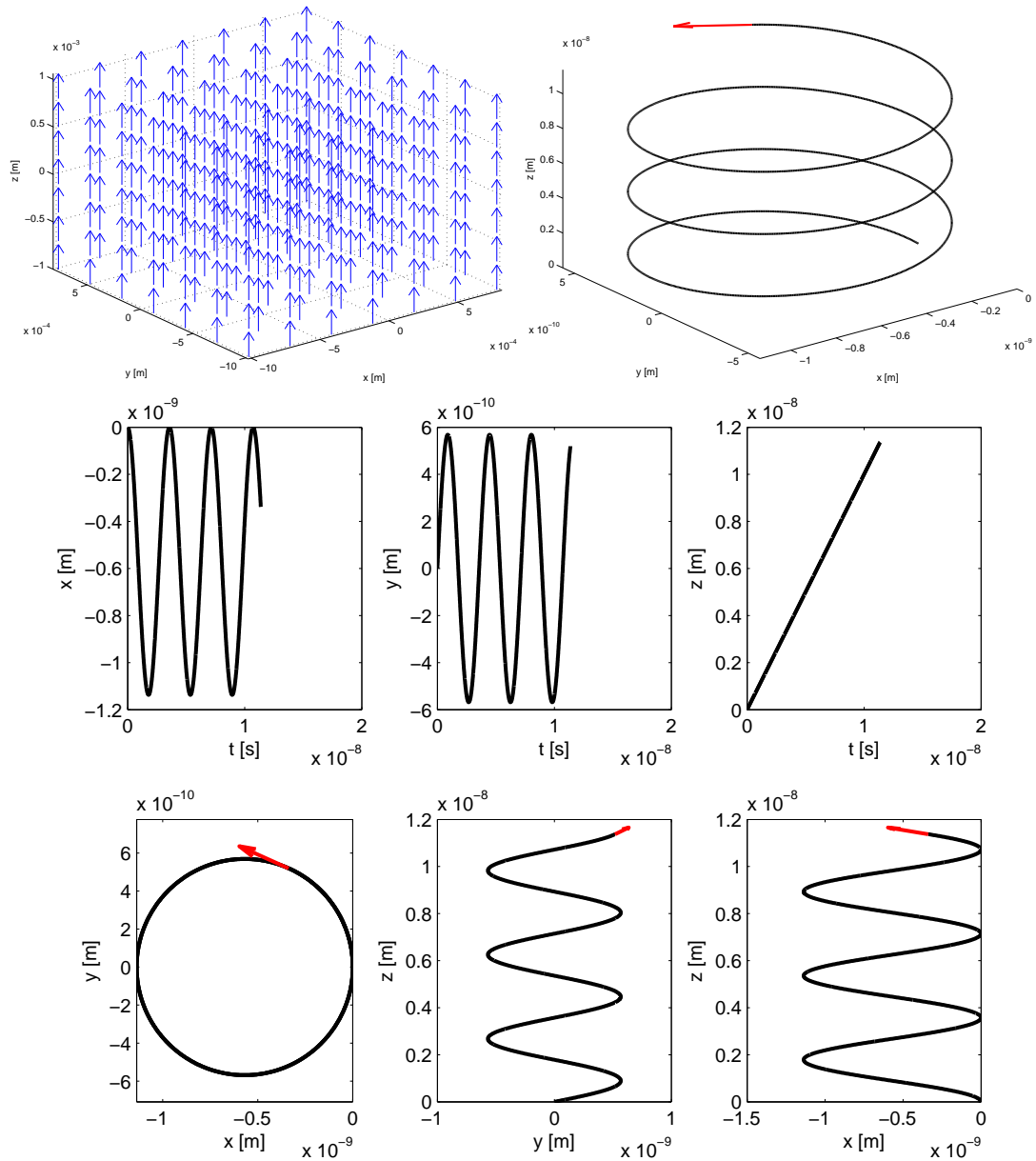


Figure 3.1: Motion of an electron in homogenous magnetic field. (A) The field configuration, blue marking \mathbf{B} and red marking \mathbf{E} , (B) the 3-D view of the motion, (C) trajectories in the coordinate–time and coordinate–coordinate spaces.

where m is the mass of the particle charged with electrical charge q . This equation becomes a system of scalar differential equations:

$$m \frac{dv_x}{dt} = qBv_y, \quad (3.3)$$

$$m \frac{dv_y}{dt} = -qBv_x, \quad (3.4)$$

$$m \frac{dv_z}{dt} = 0. \quad (3.5)$$

We immediately see that the parallel component of velocity has a trivial solution, which is the constant motion along the magnetic field. By differentiating the perpendicular components with respect to time we have

$$\frac{d^2v_x}{dt^2} = \frac{q}{m} B \frac{dv_y}{dt} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{d^2v_y}{dt^2} = -\frac{q}{m} B \frac{dv_x}{dt}. \quad (3.6)$$

By combining the two we have

$$\frac{d^2v_x}{dt^2} = \left(\frac{q}{m} B\right)^2 v_x \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{d^2v_y}{dt^2} = \left(\frac{q}{m} B\right)^2 v_y, \quad (3.7)$$

which can trivially be solved and the solution to it has a form of harmonic functions. We define

$$\omega_c = \frac{qB \operatorname{sgn} q}{m} = \frac{|q|B}{m} \quad (3.8)$$

to be a *cyclotron* frequency. Let's take the solution of the second order ordinary differential equations are

$$v_{x,y} = v_{\perp} \exp(i\omega_c t + i\delta_{x,y}), \quad (3.9)$$

where v_{\perp} is the amplitude of the velocity and obviously¹ is identical for both perpendicular components and is usually initially driven by thermal motion. Both perpendicular components are allowed to have different phase shifts $\delta_{x,y}$. The trajectory in the phase space obviously is a circle. Let's set the spacetime coordinate system so that $\delta_x = 0$. Then

$$v_x = v_{\perp} \exp i\omega_c t, \quad (3.10)$$

and we consider only the real part to have a physical meaning. Then

$$v_y = \frac{m}{qB} \frac{dv_x}{dt} = \frac{m}{qB} v_{\perp} i\omega_c \exp i\omega_c t = \frac{m}{qB} v_{\perp} i \frac{qB \operatorname{sgn} q}{m} \exp i\omega_c t = v_{\perp} i \operatorname{sgn} q \exp i\omega_c t. \quad (3.11)$$

We see that the sense of rotation in the phase space depends on the charge of the particle, thus is opposite for electrons and ions.

¹It might be shown that if we multiply (3.3) by v_x , (3.4) by v_y and sum the two, we obtain $\frac{dv_x^2}{dt} + \frac{dv_y^2}{dt} = \frac{dv^2}{dt} = 0$, hence the amplitude of the velocity is constant in time.

To obtain the trajectory, one needs to integrate (3.10) and (3.11):

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = \Re[v_x] = \Re[v_{\perp} \exp i\omega_c t] \rightarrow x - x_0 = \Re \left[-i \frac{v_{\perp}}{\omega_c} \exp i\omega_c t \right] = \frac{v_{\perp}}{\omega_c} \sin \omega_c t \quad (3.12)$$

and

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \Re[v_y] = \Re[v_{\perp} i \exp i\omega_c t] \rightarrow y - y_0 = \Re \left[\frac{v_{\perp}}{\omega_c} \operatorname{sgn} q \exp i\omega_c t \right] = \frac{v_{\perp}}{\omega_c} \operatorname{sgn} q \cos \omega_c t \quad (3.13)$$

Of course, we should not forget about the parallel component

$$\frac{dz}{dt} = \Re[v_z] = 0 \rightarrow z - z_0 = v_{\parallel} t. \quad (3.14)$$

The total trajectory is a helix. The ratio $v_{\perp}/\omega_c = r_L$ is the *Larmor radius*, the typical radius of gyration. Note that

$$r_L = \frac{v_{\perp} m}{qB \operatorname{sgn} q} \quad (3.15)$$

depends on the perpendicular velocity and the mass of the particle. More massive particle has a larger Larmor radius and thus smaller cyclotron frequency. Also, stronger magnetic field causes the particles to gyrate using tighter orbits.

Electrons and ions circulate the magnetic field lines in the opposite directions (see Fig. 3.1), but they both follow the field lines (we will generalise this case further). The charge travelling along the helical trajectory induces its own magnetic field (according to the Maxwell's equations), which has the sign opposite to the background magnetic field. Thus the plasma weakens the background magnetic field, it is *diamagnetic*.

3.2 Homogeneous electric field

Now we add a homogeneous constant electric field to the problem, and thus we choose the coordinate system so that the magnetic field is still along the z axis, and the electric field has non-trivial components only in x and z directions (see Fig. 3.2). Then the equation of motion is

$$m \frac{d}{dt} \begin{pmatrix} v_x \\ v_y \\ v_z \end{pmatrix} = q \left[\begin{pmatrix} E_x \\ 0 \\ E_z \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} v_x \\ v_y \\ v_z \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ B \end{pmatrix} \right]. \quad (3.16)$$

The parallel component can be solve immediately:

$$\frac{dv_z}{dt} = \frac{q}{m} E_z \rightarrow z - z_0 = \frac{q}{2m} E_z t^2 + v_{z,0} t. \quad (3.17)$$

There is an acceleration of the particle along the magnetic field caused by the parallel component of the electric field. By using the definition of the cyclotron frequency, the

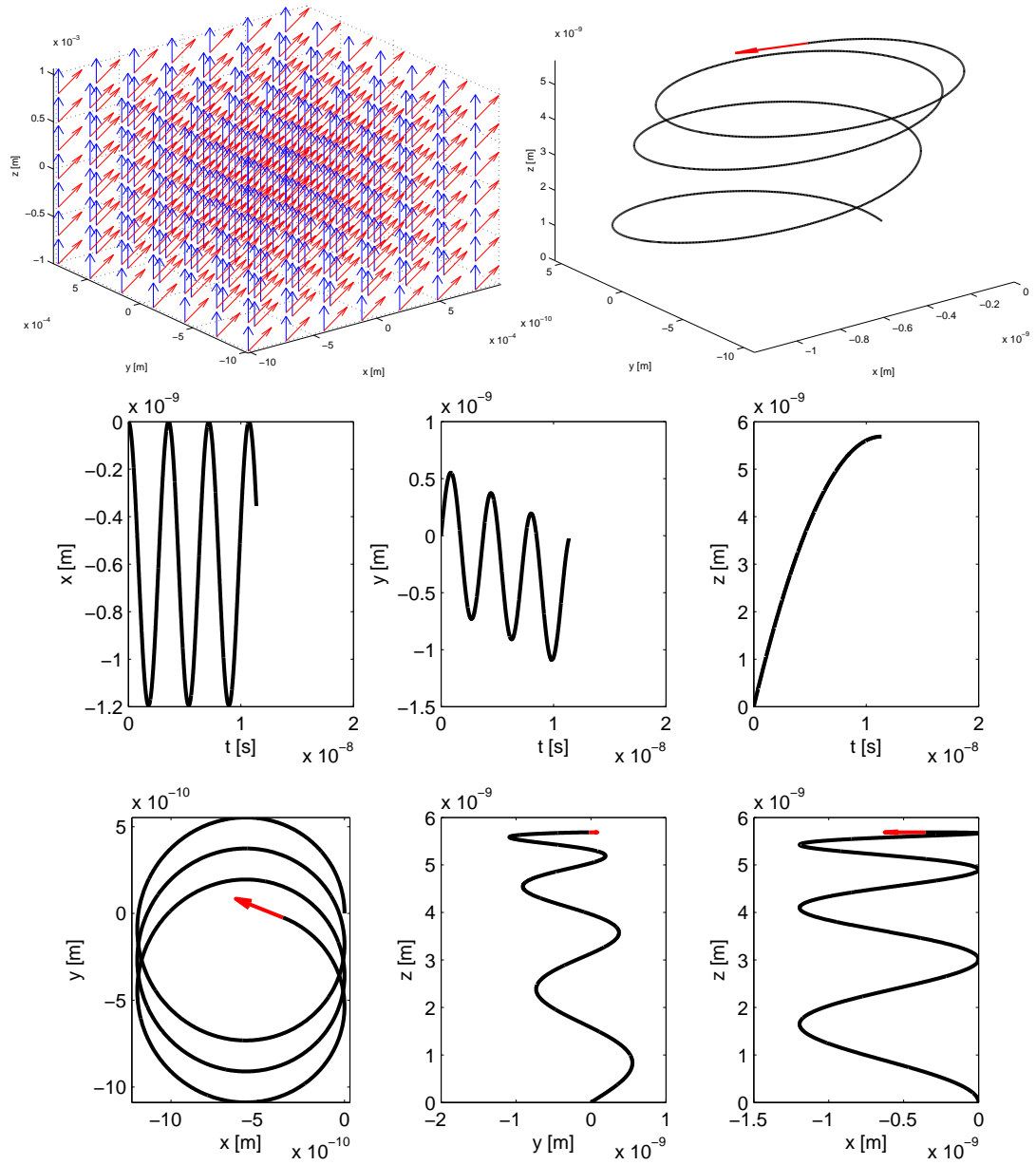


Figure 3.2: Motion of an electron in the crossed electric and magnetic fields.

remaining two components of the equation of motion are

$$m \frac{dv_x}{dt} = \frac{q}{m} E_x + \omega_c \operatorname{sgn} q v_y, \quad (3.18)$$

$$m \frac{dv_y}{dt} = -\omega_c \operatorname{sgn} q v_x. \quad (3.19)$$

Similarly to the previous case, we take the time derivative of (3.18) and (3.19) and combine the two. We have

$$\frac{d^2 v_x}{dt^2} = \omega_c \operatorname{sgn} q \frac{dv_y}{dt} = -\operatorname{sgn}^2 q \omega_c^2 v_x = -\omega_c^2 v_x, \quad (3.20)$$

where we assumed that $q \neq 0$, and

$$\frac{d^2 v_y}{dt^2} = -\operatorname{sgn} q \omega_c \frac{dv_x}{dt} = -\operatorname{sgn} q \omega_c \left(\frac{q}{m} E_x + \omega_c \operatorname{sgn} q v_y \right) = -\omega_c^2 \left(\frac{E_x}{B} + v_y \right). \quad (3.21)$$

We solved (3.20) already in the previous case and obtained (3.10):

$$v_x = v_{\perp} \exp i \omega_c t. \quad (3.22)$$

For (3.20) we note that the term E_x/B does not depend on time, thus we may simply substitute $v_y + E_x/B \rightarrow v_y$ and solve

$$\frac{d^2}{dt^2} \left(v_y + \frac{E_x}{B} \right) = -\omega_c^2 \left(v_y + \frac{E_x}{B} \right), \quad (3.23)$$

which is trivial again. Then we have solution in a form of

$$v_y = v_{\perp} i \operatorname{sgn} q \exp i \omega_c t - \frac{E_x}{B}. \quad (3.24)$$

We see that in the solution and additional term, *drift* appeared. Let's find a general solution in a vector form. The equation of motion is

$$m \frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} = q(\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}) \quad (3.25)$$

If we substitute $\mathbf{v}' = \mathbf{v} - \frac{\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}}{B^2}$ (we transform to a different coordinate system, which moves with a speed of $-\frac{\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}}{B^2}$ with respect to the original one). As we will find out later, in this moving coordinate system the parallel components of the electric field disappear. Thus (3.25) becomes:

$$\begin{aligned} m \frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} &= m \frac{d\mathbf{v}'}{dt} = q \left(\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{v}' \times \mathbf{B} + \frac{\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}}{B^2} \times \mathbf{B} \right) = \\ &= q \left[\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{v}' \times \mathbf{B} - \frac{1}{B^2} \cancel{\mathbf{E} \mathbf{B}^2} + \frac{\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{B})}{B^2} \right] = \\ &= q [\mathbf{v}' \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{E}_{\parallel}], \end{aligned} \quad (3.26)$$

where we defined the parallel component of the electric field

$$\mathbf{E}_{\parallel} = \frac{\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{B})}{B^2}. \quad (3.27)$$

We transformed the new problem to the previous case, as in this moving coordinate system the effects of the electric field (causing the acceleration along the magnetic field lines) and the magnetic field (causing the gyration around the magnetic field lines) are separable. Thus we solve the problem in the moving coordinate system and transform back to the original coordinate system.

$$\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}' + \frac{\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}}{B^2}. \quad (3.28)$$

We see that a new component of the particle velocity appeared,

$$\mathbf{v}_E = \frac{\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}}{B^2}, \quad (3.29)$$

which is the expression for the *drift of the gyration centre*, the *E-B drift*. Note that the sign of this drift does neither depend on the particle mass nor on the particle charge. This drift does not cause the separation of the charge.

3.2.1 Relativistic E-B drift

It is interesting to show that the E-B drift naturally shows up as a consequence of the Lorentz transform of the relativistic electromagnetic tensor. ((Do a complete derivation in Appendix.)) That is we transform $F_{\mu\nu}$,

$$F_{\mu\nu} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & E_x/c & E_y/c & E_z/c \\ -E_x/c & 0 & B_z & -B_y \\ -E_y/c & -B_z & 0 & B_x \\ -E_z/c & B_y & B_x & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.30)$$

using the tensor of Lorentz transform Λ_{ν}^{μ}

$$\Lambda_{\nu}^{\mu} = \begin{bmatrix} \gamma & 0 & 0 & -\beta\gamma \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\beta\gamma & 0 & 0 & \gamma \end{bmatrix}, \quad (3.31)$$

where $\beta = v/c$ and $\gamma = (1 - v^2/c^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$. Note that the velocity v is not known yet and we will obtain it as a solution to the problem. The transformed $F'_{\alpha\beta}$ is

$$\begin{aligned} F'_{\xi\zeta} &= \Lambda_{\xi}^{\mu} F_{\mu\nu} \Lambda_{\zeta}^{\nu} = \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \gamma & 0 & 0 & -\beta\gamma \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\beta\gamma & 0 & 0 & \gamma \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & E_x/c & E_y/c & E_z/c \\ -E_x/c & 0 & B_z & -B_y \\ -E_y/c & -B_z & 0 & B_x \\ -E_z/c & B_y & B_x & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \gamma & 0 & 0 & -\beta\gamma \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\beta\gamma & 0 & 0 & \gamma \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.32)$$

Now we need to properly multiply these three matrices to obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
F'_{\xi\zeta} &= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \gamma(E_x/c - \beta B_y) & \gamma(E_y/c + \beta B_x) & E_z/c \\ \gamma(\beta B_y - E_x/c) & 0 & B_z & \gamma(\beta E_z/c - B_y) \\ -\gamma(E_x/c + \beta B_x) & -B_z & 0 & \gamma(\beta E_y/c + B_x) \\ -E_z/c & \gamma(B_y - \beta E_z/c) & -\gamma(\beta E_y/c + B_x) & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & E'_x/c & E'_y/c & E'_z/c \\ -E'_x/c & 0 & B'_z & -B'_y \\ -E'_y/c & -B'_z & 0 & B'_x \\ -E'_z/c & B'_y & B'_x & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{3.33}
\end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$E'_x/c = \gamma(E_x/c - \beta B_y), \tag{3.34}$$

$$E'_y/c = \gamma(E_y/c + \beta B_x), \tag{3.35}$$

$$E'_z = E_z, \tag{3.36}$$

$$B'_x = \gamma(\beta E_y/c + B_x), \tag{3.37}$$

$$B'_y = \gamma(B_y - \beta E_x/c), \tag{3.38}$$

$$B'_z = B_z \tag{3.39}$$

are the transformation equations for all the components of the electromagnetic tensor. The target mutual velocity of both coordinate systems is the one when the effect of the magnetic and electric fields will be separable, thus when $\mathbf{E} \parallel \mathbf{B}$, which is an equivalent of $\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B} = 0$. For reasons which will show up later, let's compute the square of the cross product amplitude, which will certainly be zero for parallel vectors. Then by using the rules for mixed product we have

$$|\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}|^2 = (\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot (\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}) = \mathbf{E} \cdot [\mathbf{B} \times (\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B})] = E^2 B^2 - (\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{B})^2 = 0 \tag{3.40}$$

Let's compute this relation for transformed vectors $\frac{\mathbf{E}'}{c}$ and \mathbf{B}' and let's deal only with perpendicular components, because the parallel componets are already separated. Doing this algebra we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\left| \frac{\mathbf{E}'_{\perp}}{c} \right|^2 |\mathbf{B}'_{\perp}|^2 &= [\gamma^2(E_x/c - \beta B_y)^2 + \gamma^2(E_y/c + \beta B_x)^2] \\
&\quad [\gamma^2(\beta E_y/c + B_x)^2 + \gamma^2(B_y - \beta E_x/c)^2] = \\
&= \gamma^4(E_x/c - \beta B_y)^2 (\beta E_y/c + B_x)^2 + \gamma^4(E_x/c - \beta B_y)^2 (B_y - \beta E_x/c)^2 + \\
&\quad + \gamma^4(E_y/c + \beta B_x)^2 (\beta E_y/c + B_x)^2 + \gamma^4(E_y/c + \beta B_x)^2 (B_y - \beta E_x/c)^2 \tag{3.41}
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
\left| \frac{\mathbf{E}'_{\perp}}{c} \cdot \mathbf{B}'_{\perp} \right|^2 &= \gamma^4(E_x/c - \beta B_y)^2 (\beta E_y/c + B_x)^2 + \gamma^4(E_y/c + \beta B_x)^2 (B_y - \beta E_x/c)^2 + \\
&\quad + 2\gamma^4(E_x/c - \beta B_y)(E_y/c + \beta B_y)(\beta E_y/c + B_x)(B_y - \beta E_x/c). \tag{3.42}
\end{aligned}$$

Hence [we immediately see that when subtracting (3.42) from (3.41), first terms cancel with each other, as do also the fourth term from (3.41) and second term from (3.42)]:

$$\begin{aligned}
\left| \frac{\mathbf{E}'_{\perp}}{c} \cdot \mathbf{B}' \right|^2 - \left| \frac{\mathbf{E}'_{\perp}}{c} \right|^2 |\mathbf{B}'|^2 &= \gamma^4 (E_x/c - \beta B_y)^2 (B_y - \beta E_x/c)^2 + \\
&+ \gamma^4 (E_y/c + \beta B_x)^2 (\beta E_y/c + B_x)^2 - \\
&- 2\gamma^4 (E_x/c - \beta B_y)(E_y/c + \beta B_x)(\beta E_y/c + B_x)(B_y - \beta E_x/c) = \\
&= \gamma^4 \left[\left(\frac{E_x}{c} - \beta B_y \right)^2 (B_y - \beta \frac{E_x}{c}) - \left(\frac{E_y}{c} + \beta B_x \right)^2 (\beta \frac{E_y}{c} + B_x) \right]^2 = \\
&= \gamma^4 \left[\beta \left(\frac{E_x^2}{c^2} + \frac{E_y^2}{c^2} + B_x^2 + B_y^2 \right) + (1 + \beta^2) \left(\frac{E_y}{c} B_x - \frac{E_x}{c} B_y \right) \right]^2 = \\
&= \gamma^4 \left[\beta \left(\frac{E^2}{c^2} + B^2 + (1 + \beta^2) \left(\mathbf{B} \times \frac{\mathbf{E}}{c} \right)_z \right) \right]^2 = 0, \quad (3.43)
\end{aligned}$$

where we used

$$(1 + \beta^2) \left(\mathbf{B} \times \frac{\mathbf{E}}{c} \right)_z = (1 + \beta^2) \left(B_x \frac{E_y}{c} - B_y \frac{E_x}{c} \right). \quad (3.44)$$

Equation (3.43) may be true if and only if we have

$$\frac{\beta}{1 + \beta^2} = \frac{\frac{\mathbf{E}}{c} \times \mathbf{B}}{\frac{E^2}{c^2} + B^2} \quad (3.45)$$

which implicitly defines the target speed v_E of the coordinate system, in which the effects of magnetic and electric fields are separable. This speed is hidden in $\beta = v_E/c$. We will not solve this equation properly but rather take an approximation of $\beta < 1$, when we may use the β^2 as a correction term and obtain

$$\mathbf{v}_E = (1 + \beta^2) \frac{\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}}{\frac{E^2}{c^2} + B^2}. \quad (3.46)$$

Note that this is the relativistic version of (3.29). When assuming non-relativistic case, thus when β is small and $|\mathbf{E}| \ll c$, the two expressions equal exactly.

3.2.2 Drift in the field of general force

Let's make a generalisation, which we will use further. In the case of E-B drift, we have an additional force (the force of the electric field) acting on the motion of the particle. This force (the Lorentz force) is simply given by

$$\mathbf{F}_E = q\mathbf{E}. \quad (3.47)$$

After substitution into (3.29) we have

$$\mathbf{v}_E = \frac{1}{q} \frac{\mathbf{F}_E \times \mathbf{B}}{B^2}. \quad (3.48)$$

Could this expression be generalised for *any* force \mathbf{F} other than Lorentz? The answer is yes, if and only if the force in question acts homogeneously, in particular, when the vector of the force does not depend on speed and position. Then we have a drift of gyration centre \mathbf{v}_{gs}

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{gs}} = \frac{1}{q} \frac{\mathbf{F} \times \mathbf{B}}{B^2}. \quad (3.49)$$

An example? The action of gravity field may be considered homogeneous in laboratory or at least when the small spatial scales (compared to the curvature of the gravity field lines) are in question. Then we have the *gravity drift* \mathbf{v}_g

$$\mathbf{v}_g = \frac{m}{q} \frac{\mathbf{g} \times \mathbf{B}}{B^2}, \quad (3.50)$$

where \mathbf{g} is the vector of gravity acceleration. How about the centrifugal force $\mathbf{F} = \frac{mv_{\parallel}^2}{R^2} \mathbf{R}$ acting in the curved magnetic field? Is the expression for the curvature drift \mathbf{v}_c

$$\mathbf{v}_c = \frac{mv_{\parallel}^2}{qR^2B^2} \mathbf{R} \times \mathbf{B} \quad (3.51)$$

correct? It is not, because we violated one of the assumptions written above: the vector of the acting force *does depend on position* in this case. Magnetic field is not homogeneous anymore and we must find another correction.

3.3 Inhomogeneous magnetic field

Let us study the effects of the non-homogeneous magnetic field. We will keep our coordinate system, thus having magnetic field in the z -direction, however we will allow for a smooth change in the y -direction. What does the word *smooth* mean? Let's remind that there is a characteristic scale of the particle motion even in the case of homogeneous field: the Larmor radius $r_L = \frac{mv_{\perp}}{qB \text{sgn } q}$. By *smooth* we further mean that the characteristic spatial change of the magnetic field occurs on much larger scales than the Larmor gyration. The characteristic scale of the spatial change of the magnetic field L may be estimated by comparing the gradient of the field to its magnitude, thus

$$L \sim \frac{|\mathbf{B}|}{|\nabla B|}. \quad (3.52)$$

We will study the case when $L \gg r_L$. The ratio of the two is a small number, thus can be used as a small parameter to expand the physical functions to the Taylor series and neglect the higher order of this small parameter. Hence in our case of the inhomogeneous magnetic field we have to the first order

$$\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B}_0 + (\mathbf{r} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B} \quad (3.53)$$

and in our coordinate system we have

$$B_z = B_0 + y \frac{\partial B_z}{\partial y}. \quad (3.54)$$

What effect do we expect? By waving our hands we can say that when we study the gyration of the testing particle, we see that the particles still gyrate along the magnetic field lines. However, in that part of the orbit, where the magnetic field is stronger, the Larmor radius is smaller and vice versa. We should see a drift in the direction perpendicular to both \mathbf{B} and $\nabla|\mathbf{B}|$. We would expect the effect to increase with the gradient of the field, when the difference between the effective radii in the “upper” and “lower” part of the orbit is larger.

In our case, only the y component of the Lorentz force is perturbed

$$F_y = -qv_x B_z = -qv_x \left(B_0 + y \frac{\partial B_z}{\partial y} \right). \quad (3.55)$$

The first term on the right-hand side is responsible for the normal Larmor rotation, the second term is a correction caused by the inhomogeneous magnetic field and thus causes the expected drift. The approach we will take is that we will separate the effects of the B_0 causing the Larmor rotation and the effect of the small correction from $\nabla|\mathbf{B}|$. To investigate the correction, we will average the particle motion over one Larmor rotation. Let's remind again that this is possible if and only if the Larmor rotation is the dominant motion of the studied particle and thus when $|\partial B_z/\partial y| \ll |B_0|$. Then we use the solution for v_x from (3.10) and for y from (3.13). We have

$$F_y = -qv_{\perp} \cos \omega_c t \left(B_0 + r_L \operatorname{sgn} q \cos \omega_c t \frac{\partial B_z}{\partial y} \right). \quad (3.56)$$

The averaged (over Larmor orbit) Lorentz force is thus

$$\begin{aligned} \langle F_y \rangle &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} F_y d(\omega_c t) = -\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} qv_{\perp} \cos \omega_c t \left(B_0 + r_L \operatorname{sgn} q \cos \omega_c t \frac{\partial B_z}{\partial y} \right) d(\omega_c t) = \\ &= -qv_{\perp} B_0 \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \cos \omega_c t d(\omega_c t) - qv_{\perp} r_L \operatorname{sgn} q \frac{\partial B_z}{\partial y} \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \cos^2 \omega_c t d(\omega_c t) = \\ &= 0 - \frac{1}{2} v_{\perp} r_L q \operatorname{sgn} q \frac{\partial B_z}{\partial y}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.57)$$

We leave it to the reader to prove that the integral over one period of the sine or cosine function vanishes and that the integral over one period of the sine squared or cosine squared equals to π .

We found a correction term. Since the averages of the remaining components of the Lorentz force vanish, we may generalise

$$\langle F \rangle = -\frac{1}{2} v_{\perp} r_L q \operatorname{sgn} q \nabla|\mathbf{B}|, \quad (3.58)$$

and use it in the expression for the drift in the field of general force (3.49). Note that under approximations we took the additional force defined by (3.58) is homogeneous

and does not depend on velocity. Hence we have a drift of the gyration centre, the *grad-B drift* $\mathbf{v}_{\nabla B}$:

$$\mathbf{v}_{\nabla B} = \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{sgn} q v_{\perp} r_L \frac{\mathbf{B} \times \nabla |\mathbf{B}|}{B^2}. \quad (3.59)$$

Note that the sign does depend on the sign of the particle charge and thus the grad-B drift may cause the separation of charges and to drive additional electric field. See Fig. 3.3.

At the beginning we used the assumption of small spatial changes of the magnetic field to derive this relation and we should check that the assumption holds and thus the solution is consistent. We simply compute how much does the particle move due to the drift after one Larmor rotation, hence after one period $\tau = 2\pi/\omega_c$. We will further use (3.52) and $v_{\perp}/\omega_c = r_L$:

$$\Delta = \tau |\mathbf{v}_{\nabla B}| = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_c} \frac{1}{2} v_{\perp} r_L \frac{|\nabla B|}{|B|} = \pi r_L \frac{r_L}{L} \ll r_L \quad (3.60)$$

under the assumption $L \gg r_L$. The solution is consistent with the assumptions, the dominant motion still is the Larmor rotation.

Now we may continue to investigate the motion of particles in the curved magnetic field. Obviously, additionally to the curvature drift (3.51) we need to account for inherited gradient of the field. Let's make a qualitative estimate. The Cartesian coordinates are no longer convenient to investigate this case, cylindrical coordinates (R, ϑ, z) are more appropriate (they incorporate naturally the "curvature" of the field). In any case, we assumed the changes of the magnetic field to be smooth, thus we may always introduce *local* cylindrical coordinates to approximate the real configuration of the field lines. In vacuum we have

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mu_0 \mathbf{j} = 0, \quad (3.61)$$

hence when we assume that the dominant direction of the magnetic field lines is along the azimuthal ϑ direction, $\nabla |\mathbf{B}|$ must have only the component in R direction. Hence

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial}{\partial R} (R B_{\vartheta}) = 0 \quad (3.62)$$

and therefore

$$B_{\vartheta} = \frac{\mathcal{C}}{R}, \quad (3.63)$$

where \mathcal{C} is an integration constant. We further obtain

$$\nabla B = \frac{\partial}{\partial R} \frac{\mathcal{C}}{R} = -\mathcal{C} \frac{1}{R^2} \mathbf{R} \quad (3.64)$$

and when expressing \mathcal{C} from (3.63) we finally have

$$\nabla B = -\frac{|B|}{R^2} \mathbf{R}. \quad (3.65)$$

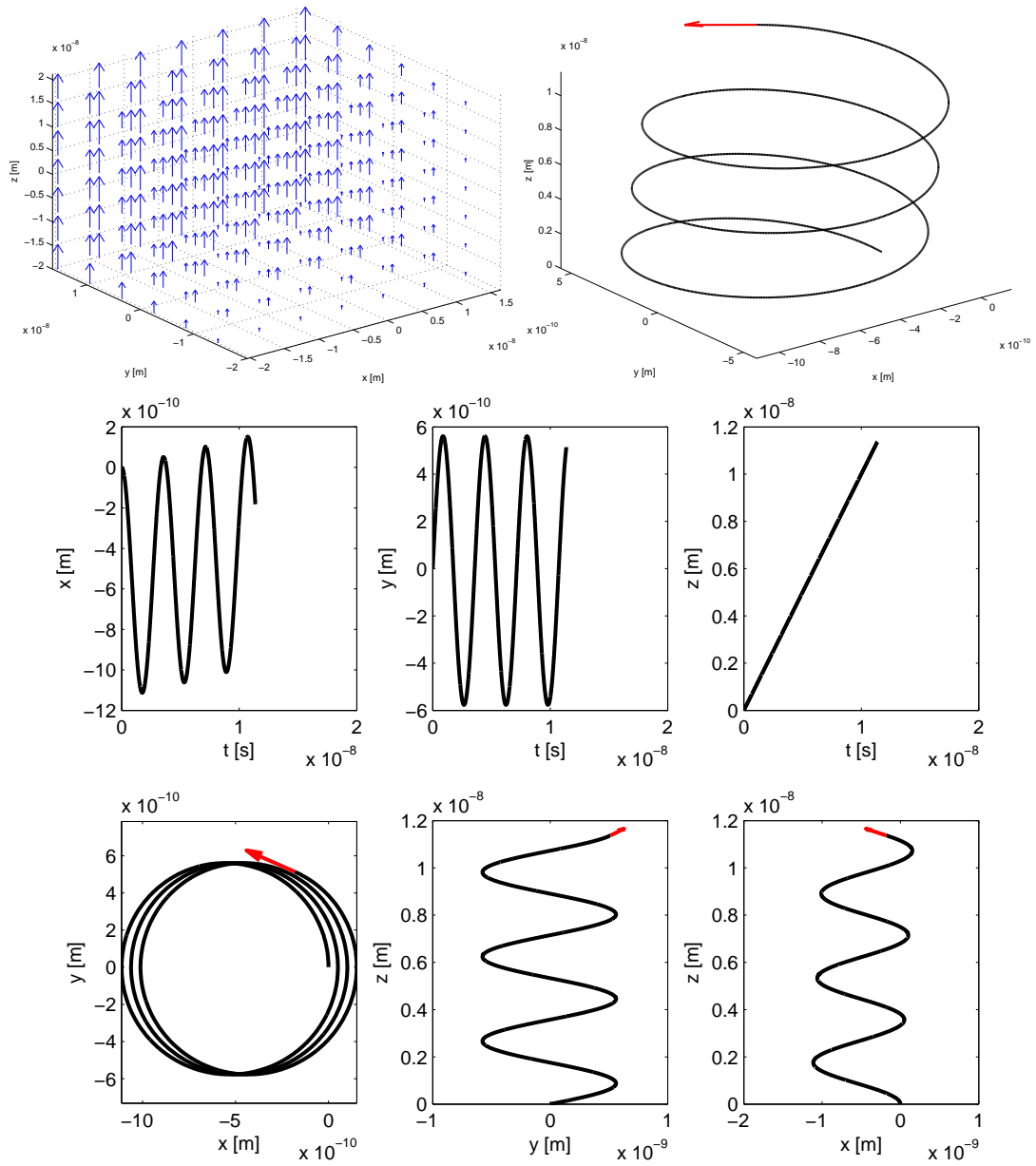


Figure 3.3: Drift of an electron in an inhomogeneous magnetic field.

Now we can ingest this expression for grad-B into (3.59) and (when also explicitly writing the expression for r_L) have

$$\mathbf{v}_{\nabla B} = -\frac{1}{2} \operatorname{sgn} q \frac{v_{\perp} r_L}{B^2} \mathbf{B} \times |\mathbf{B}| \frac{\mathbf{R}}{R} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{m v_{\perp}^2}{q B^2 R^2} \mathbf{R} \times \mathbf{B}. \quad (3.66)$$

After adding the curvature drift (3.51) we finally have an expression for the drift in the curved magnetic field:

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{gs}} = \mathbf{v}_c + \mathbf{v}_{\nabla B} = \frac{m}{q} \frac{\mathbf{R} \times \mathbf{B}}{R^2 B^2} \left(v_{\parallel}^2 + \frac{1}{2} v_{\perp}^2 \right). \quad (3.67)$$

This has important consequences, especially for laboratory plasmas. It shows that the plasma cannot be confined in the simply curved magnetic field. Both important drifts, the curvature drift and the grad-B drift, sum up and thus act to displace the plasma. Both these drifts are drivers for *kink instability*. Let's imagine that the plasma flows along the cylindrical tube of the magnetic field (the flux tube) with a prevalently poloidal configuration of the magnetic field, which is generated by the current. When this flux tube is displaced (e.g. by some random motions), the tube gets curved with the gradient of the magnetic field pointing against the displacement. The drifts in the curved field cause the charge separation in the direction perpendicular to the plane of the kink. Separated charges introduce a small electric field and the E-B drift cause the instability to grow.

When the configuration of the magnetic field in the flux tube is rather helical than cylindrical, E-B drift may cancel the drift in the curved magnetic field and the plasma may remain confined within this tube. This is the famous tokamak configuration.

3.4 Inhomogeneous electric field

Also the inhomogeneous electric field requires the correction to the normal E-B drift of particles. Let us investigate one example only, when the electric field has a harmonic character. Such configuration is not uncommon, later on we will study the plasma oscillations and waves propagating through plasmas, where we will see that there are way too many harmonic motions in plasmas, that may be approximated as a superposition of simple harmonic functions. Let us assume that we have a periodic electric field in the x direction (see Fig. 3.4),

$$\mathbf{E} = E_0 \cos ky \mathbf{e}_x, \quad (3.68)$$

where k is the wave number, which is related to the wavelength ($\lambda = 2\pi/k$), which is the characteristic spatial scale of the perturbation. Otherwise we still keep the same configuration of the coordinate system as we did in the previous cases. Hence the perpendicular components of equation of motion are

$$\frac{dv_x}{dt} = \frac{qB}{m} v_y + \frac{q}{m} E_x(y) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{dv_y}{dt} = -\frac{qB}{m} v_x. \quad (3.69)$$

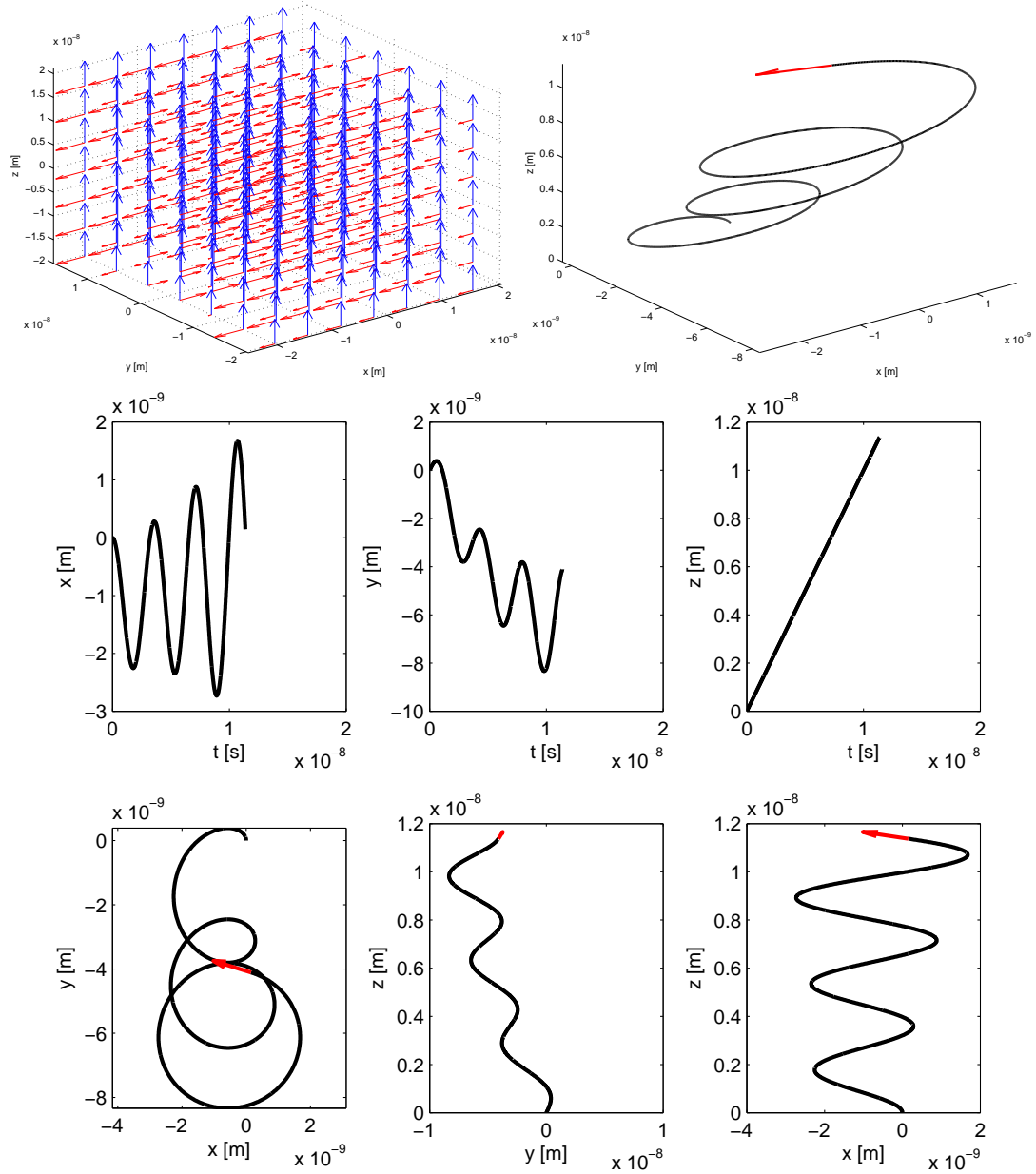


Figure 3.4: Drift of electrons in the inhomogeneous electric field.

The standard way to solve this system is to take the time derivative of these equations and combine the two, hence

$$\frac{d^2 v_x}{dt^2} = -\omega_c^2 v_x + \omega_c \frac{\text{sgn } q}{B} \frac{dE_x}{dt} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{d^2 v_y}{dt^2} = -\omega_c^2 v_y - \omega_c^2 \frac{E_x(y)}{B}. \quad (3.70)$$

This is a system of implicit ordinary differential equations, which cannot be trivially solved. We would need to proceed iteratively, since in order to find the solution, we need to know \mathbf{E} , which is the function of the solution. Let's focus to the case of small electric fields and apply the averaging formalism again in order to find the correction. In this approach we simply use the unperturbed solution and average over one Larmor rotation.

By substituting (3.13) into (3.70) we have

$$\frac{d^2 v_y}{dt^2} = -\omega_c^2 v_y - \omega_c^2 \frac{E_0}{B} \cos[k(y_0 + r_L \text{sgn } q r_L \sin \omega_c t)], \quad (3.71)$$

which we average over one Larmor orbit to have

$$\left\langle \frac{d^2 v_y}{dt^2} \right\rangle = -\omega_c^2 \langle v_y \rangle - \omega_c^2 \frac{E_0}{B} \langle \cos[k(y_0 + r_L \text{sgn } q r_L \sin \omega_c t)] \rangle. \quad (3.72)$$

The action of the additional force oscillates, therefore when averaged over one Larmor orbit, it vanishes, thus

$$\left\langle \frac{d^2 v_y}{dt^2} \right\rangle = 0. \quad (3.73)$$

We approximate the cosine term by expansion into Taylor series in the parameter kr_L , which we assume to be small². Essentially again the electric field is perturbed on scales much larger than the Larmor radius

$$\begin{aligned} \cos[k(y_0 + r_L \text{sgn } q r_L \sin \omega_c t)] &= \\ &= \cos ky_0 \cos(kr_L \text{sgn } q \sin \omega_c t) - \sin ky_0 \sin(kr_L \text{sgn } q \sin \omega_c t) = \\ &= \cos ky_0 \cos(kr_L \sin \omega_c t) - \text{sgn } q \sin ky_0 \sin(kr_L \sin \omega_c t) \\ &= \cos ky_0 \left[1 - \frac{1}{2} k^2 r_L^2 \sin^2 \omega_c t \right] - \text{sgn } q \sin ky_0 (kr_L \sin \omega_c t) \end{aligned} \quad (3.74)$$

Hence after averaging the term with the sine vanishes, while the term with the sine squared becomes 1/2. Finally

$$\langle v_y \rangle = \frac{E_0}{B} \cos ky_0 \left(1 - \frac{1}{4} k^2 r_L^2 \right) = -\frac{E_x(y)}{B} \left(1 - \frac{1}{4} k^2 r_L^2 \right). \quad (3.75)$$

We may generalise this expression to

$$\mathbf{v}_E = \frac{\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}}{B^2} \left(1 - \frac{1}{4} k^2 r_L^2 \right) \quad (3.76)$$

²We remind that $\cos \varepsilon \sim 1 - \frac{1}{2} \varepsilon^2$ and $\sin \varepsilon \sim \varepsilon$ for $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$.

and we keep it to the reader to prove that in our case it is the correct generalisation. In the section dealing with waves in plasmas we will often use the solution as a superposition of various modes, when for each mode we may conveniently solve the equations in the Fourier space. The Fourier representation is convenient because differential operators become multiplications. We ask the reader to see (5.13) for a short moment and apply it to the equation we just obtained. Then we have We may generalise this expression to

$$\mathbf{v}_E = -\frac{\mathbf{B} \times}{B^2} \left(1 + \frac{1}{4} r_L^2 \Delta \right) \mathbf{E}. \quad (3.77)$$

The correction term captures the effect of the finite Larmor radius. Since r_L is larger for ions, ions “feel” the changes in the background electric field stronger than electrons. When an electric field appears in plasma, the *drift instability* causes this electric field to grow. Also note that the effect of the inhomogeneous electric field is larger ($\propto (kr_L)^2$) than the effect of the inhomogeneous magnetic field ($\propto kr_L$).

3.5 Drift currents

Some of the drifts discussed above depend on the mass or charge of the particles, thus lead to the separation of charges and give rise to the *drift currents*. In plasmas we have to consider k different particle species, each having particle density n_k , mass m_k and q_k . From the general equation for the drift velocity (3.49) we derive the relation for the drift current

$$\mathbf{j}_{\text{drift}} = \sum_k n_k q_k \mathbf{v}_{\text{drift},k} = \frac{\sum_k n_k \mathbf{F}_k}{B^2} \times \mathbf{B}. \quad (3.78)$$

For instance the drift current due to the grad-B drift is

$$\mathbf{j}_{\nabla B} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_k \frac{m_k n_k v_{\perp,k}^2}{B^2} (\mathbf{B} \times \nabla B). \quad (3.79)$$

This current leads to the charge separation. An example of the natural drift current is the ring current in the Earth’s magnetosphere.

7

3.6 Guiding centre motion

Let us show that it is possible to derive all the above discussed drifts and much more in a very elegant and general way³. We will correctly solve the equations of motion and will find the corrections to the normal gyration under the approximation of slowly varying fields. That means that we limit ourselves to the case when

$$\frac{r_L}{L} = \frac{v_{\perp}}{\omega_c L} \ll 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1}{\omega_c \tau} \ll 1, \quad (3.80)$$

³Following de Blank 2012: *Guiding center motion*, Fusion Science and Technology 61(2T), 61–68

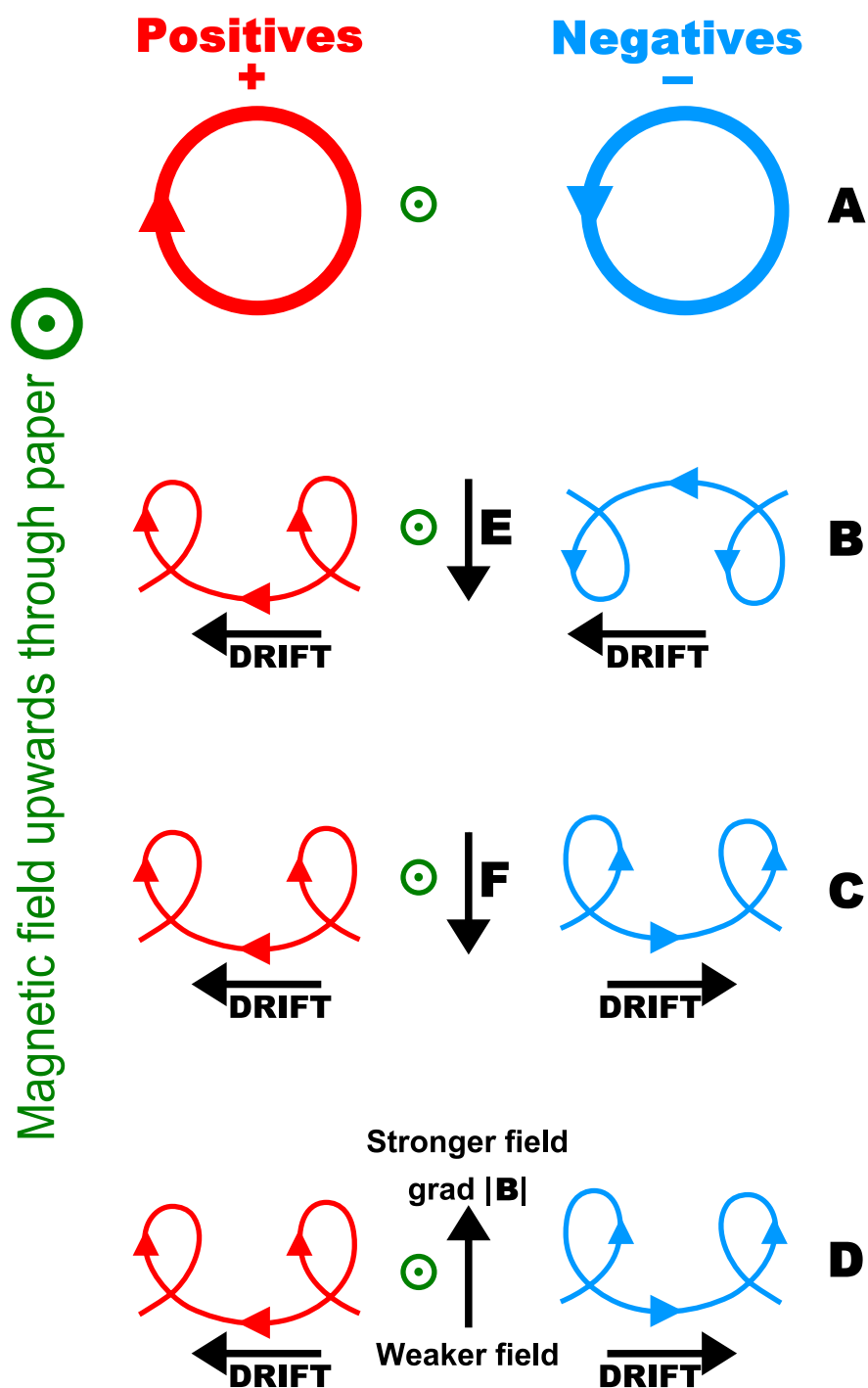


Figure 3.5: Charged particle drifts in a homogeneous magnetic field]. (A) No disturbing force (B) With an electric field, E (C) With an independent force, F (e.g. gravity) (D) In an inhomogeneous magnetic field, $\text{grad } B$. Based on Hannes Alfvén's, *Cosmical Electrodynamics* (1950); (cc) Stannered, redesigned by Ian Tresman.

where L and τ are the characteristic spatial and temporal changes of the fields \mathbf{E} and \mathbf{B} respectively. We see that $\omega_c^{-1} \propto m/q$, which is small. Thus we define $\epsilon \equiv m/q$ to be a small parameter of the system and we will expand the equations to the Taylor series using this parameter. Then $r_L \propto \epsilon L$ and $\tau^{-1} \propto \epsilon \omega_c$. We solve a system of ordinary differential equations

$$\frac{d\mathbf{x}}{dt} = \mathbf{v} \quad (3.81)$$

$$\frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} = \frac{q}{m} (\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}). \quad (3.82)$$

We will expand these equations in ϵ . But first, we introduce the coordinate transformation $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) \rightarrow (\mathbf{R}, \mathbf{u})$. Coordinates (\mathbf{R}, \mathbf{u}) are functions of time.

$$\mathbf{R}(t) = \mathbf{x}(t) - \boldsymbol{\rho}(t), \quad (3.83)$$

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_E. \quad (3.84)$$

Here \mathbf{R} is the instantaneous position of the gyration center, \mathbf{x} is the instantaneous position of the given particle (with respect to the fixed reference coordinate system), $\mathbf{v}_E \equiv \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}/B^2$ is the velocity of the E-B drift [see (3.29)], and $\boldsymbol{\rho}$ is the instantaneous position of the particle with respect to the gyration centre. From the previous section we may see that

$$\boldsymbol{\rho} \equiv \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{u}, \quad (3.85)$$

where $\mathbf{b}(\mathbf{x}, t) = \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{x}, t)/|\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{x}, t)|$ is the unity vector along the field lines. Vectors \mathbf{b} and \mathbf{v}_E are functions of both space (\mathbf{x}) and time t and their values are measured with respect to the particle. Note that

$$\omega_c(t) = \frac{B(\mathbf{x}, t)}{\epsilon} \quad (3.86)$$

is an instantaneous cyclotron frequency.

We further introduce the local cylindrical coordinates in the plane perpendicular to the magnetic field with two direction vectors $(\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2)$, so that

$$\mathbf{u} = v_{\parallel} \mathbf{b} + u_{\perp} \mathbf{e}_{\perp}, \quad \text{where} \quad \mathbf{e}_{\perp} \equiv \mathbf{e}_1 \cos \phi + \mathbf{e}_2 \sin \phi, \quad \text{and} \quad \phi = \phi_0 - \omega_c t. \quad (3.87)$$

Note again that the base vectors of this local coordinate system $(\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \mathbf{b})$ vary in both the space and time. Unit vectors \mathbf{e}_{\perp} and

$$\mathbf{e}_{\rho} \equiv \mathbf{e}_2 \cos \phi - \mathbf{e}_1 \sin \phi \quad (3.88)$$

are projections of the particle's velocity \mathbf{u} and relative position $\boldsymbol{\rho}$, respectively, to the plane perpendicular to \mathbf{b} .

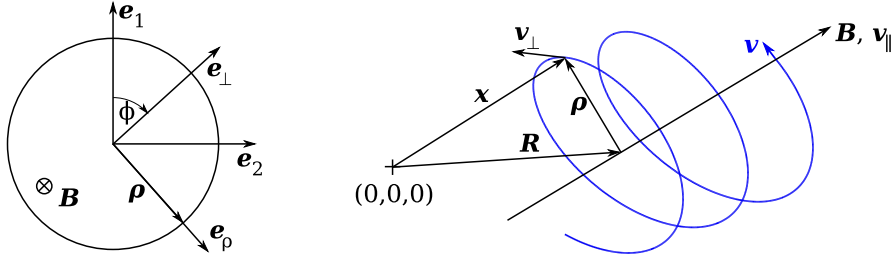


Figure 3.6: Sketch of the coordinate system of the guiding centre variables.

Hence we derived useful relations defining the guiding centre variables (see also Fig. 3.6).

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{R} + \boldsymbol{\rho}, \quad (3.89)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\rho} = -\frac{m}{qB^2} \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B} = \rho \operatorname{sgn} q \mathbf{e}_\rho, \quad (3.90)$$

$$\mathbf{v}_\perp = \frac{d\boldsymbol{\rho}}{dt} = u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp, \text{ and} \quad (3.91)$$

$$\mathbf{v} = v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp + \mathbf{v}_E. \quad (3.92)$$

Now we transform (3.81) and (3.82) to the newly introduced coordinates. For (3.84) we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\mathbf{R}}{dt} &= \frac{d\mathbf{x}}{dt} - \frac{d\boldsymbol{\rho}}{dt} = \mathbf{v} - \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{u} \right) = \\ &= v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp + \mathbf{v}_E + \epsilon \mathbf{u} \times \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{\mathbf{b}}{B} \right) - \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \frac{d\mathbf{u}}{dt} = \\ &= v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp + \mathbf{v}_E + \epsilon \mathbf{u} \times \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{\mathbf{b}}{B} \right) - \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \left(\frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} - \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt} \right) = \\ &= v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E + \epsilon \mathbf{u} \times \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{\mathbf{b}}{B} \right) + \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.93)$$

where we used the equation of motion to evaluate the term $\frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt}$:

$$\begin{aligned} -\frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} &= -\frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \left[\frac{1}{\epsilon} (\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}) \right] = \\ &= -\frac{1}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{E} - \frac{1}{B} (\mathbf{v} \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{B} \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{v}) = -\frac{1}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{E} - \mathbf{v} \frac{\mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{B}}{B^2} + v_\parallel \frac{\mathbf{B}}{B} = \\ &= \mathbf{v}_E - \mathbf{v} + v_\parallel \mathbf{b} = -u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp. \end{aligned} \quad (3.94)$$

For the equations of motion, we expand \mathbf{v} using (3.92), then we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d(v_{\parallel}\mathbf{b})}{dt} + \frac{d(u_{\perp}\mathbf{e}_{\perp})}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt} &= \frac{1}{\epsilon} [\mathbf{E} + (v_{\parallel}\mathbf{b} + u_{\perp}\mathbf{e}_{\perp} + \mathbf{v}_E) \times \mathbf{B}] = \\
&= \frac{1}{\epsilon} [\mathbf{E} + v_{\parallel}\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{B} + u_{\perp}\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{v}_E \times \mathbf{B}] = \\
&= \frac{1}{\epsilon} \left[\mathbf{E} + u_{\perp}\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \times \mathbf{B} - \frac{E}{B^2} \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{B} + \frac{\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{B}}{B^2} \mathbf{B} \right] = \\
&= \frac{1}{\epsilon} [E_{\parallel}\mathbf{b} + u_{\perp}\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \times \mathbf{B}], \tag{3.95}
\end{aligned}$$

where we defined $E_{\parallel} \equiv \frac{\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{B}}{|\mathbf{B}|}$.

Now we project this equation to the directions \mathbf{e}_{\perp} , \mathbf{b} , and \mathbf{e}_{ρ} . For the first one we have

$$\frac{1}{\epsilon} [E_{\parallel}\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\perp} + u_{\perp}(\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\perp}] = \left[\frac{d(v_{\parallel}\mathbf{b})}{dt} + \frac{d(u_{\perp}\mathbf{e}_{\perp})}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt} \right] \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\perp}. \tag{3.96}$$

The left-hand side is zero since $\mathbf{b} \perp \mathbf{e}_{\perp}$ and $(\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\perp} = (\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \times \mathbf{e}_{\perp}) \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$. Thus we have

$$0 = \mathbf{e}_{\perp} \cdot v_{\parallel} \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt} + \mathbf{e}_{\perp} \cdot \mathbf{b} \frac{dv_{\parallel}}{dt} + \mathbf{e}_{\perp} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\perp} \frac{du_{\perp}}{dt} + u_{\perp}\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_{\perp}}{dt} + \mathbf{e}_{\perp} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt}. \tag{3.97}$$

The second term vanishes, because $\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \perp \mathbf{b}$ and the fourth term is

$$\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_{\perp}}{dt} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} (\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\perp}) = 0, \tag{3.98}$$

because $\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\perp} = 1$. Finally, we have

$$\frac{du_{\perp}}{dt} = -\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \cdot \left(v_{\parallel} \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt} \right). \tag{3.99}$$

For the projection into the \mathbf{b} direction we have:

$$\frac{1}{\epsilon} [E_{\parallel}\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{b} + u_{\perp}(\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \mathbf{b}] = \left[\frac{d(v_{\parallel}\mathbf{b})}{dt} + \frac{d(u_{\perp}\mathbf{e}_{\perp})}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt} \right] \cdot \mathbf{b}. \tag{3.100}$$

The second term on the right-hand side of (3.100) is zero because $(\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \mathbf{b} = -(\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\perp} = 0$. Writing out the terms on the right-hand side explicitly, we obtain

$$\frac{E_{\parallel}}{\epsilon} = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{b} \frac{dv_{\parallel}}{dt} + v_{\parallel} \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\perp} \frac{du_{\perp}}{dt} + u_{\perp}\mathbf{b} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_{\perp}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E \cdot \mathbf{b}}{dt} - \mathbf{v}_E \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt}. \tag{3.101}$$

The second term on the right-hand side of (3.101) is zero from the same arguments as in (3.98). The third term vanishes as $\mathbf{b} \perp \mathbf{e}_{\perp}$ and the fifth term also vanishes, because $\mathbf{v}_E \perp \mathbf{b}$. The fourth term may be rewritten as

$$\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\perp} \frac{du_{\perp}}{dt} = u_{\perp} \frac{d\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{dt} - u_{\perp}\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt} = -u_{\perp}\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt}. \tag{3.102}$$

Finally, we have

$$\frac{dv_{\parallel}}{dt} = \frac{E_{\parallel}}{\epsilon} + (u_{\perp} \mathbf{e}_{\perp} + \mathbf{v}_E) \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt}. \quad (3.103)$$

The most intense algebra concerns the projection into the \mathbf{e}_{ρ} direction, where we will evaluate the individual terms one by one.

$$\frac{1}{\epsilon} \left[E_{\parallel} \overset{\textcircled{1}}{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\rho} + u_{\perp} (\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\rho} \right] = \mathbf{e}_{\rho} \cdot \overset{\textcircled{3}}{\frac{d(v_{\parallel} \mathbf{b})}{dt}} + \mathbf{e}_{\rho} \cdot \overset{\textcircled{4}}{\frac{d(u_{\perp} \mathbf{e}_{\perp})}{dt}} + \mathbf{e}_{\rho} \cdot \overset{\textcircled{5}}{\frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt}}. \quad (3.104)$$

① :

$$\mathbf{b} \perp \mathbf{e}_{\rho} \Rightarrow \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\rho} = 0 \quad (3.105)$$

② :

$$\begin{aligned} u_{\perp} (\mathbf{e}_{\perp} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\rho} &= u_{\perp} (\mathbf{e}_{\rho} \times \mathbf{e}_{\perp}) \cdot \mathbf{B} = u_{\perp} \left[\begin{pmatrix} -\sin \phi \\ \cos \phi \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} \cos \phi \\ \sin \phi \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \right] \cdot \mathbf{B} = \\ &= u_{\perp} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ B \end{pmatrix} = -u_{\perp} B \end{aligned} \quad (3.106)$$

③ :

$$\mathbf{e}_{\rho} \cdot \frac{d(v_{\parallel} \mathbf{b})}{dt} = \mathbf{e}_{\rho} \cdot v_{\parallel} \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt} + \cancel{\mathbf{e}_{\rho} \cdot \mathbf{b} \frac{dv_{\parallel}}{dt}} \quad (3.107)$$

④ :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{e}_{\rho} \cdot \frac{d(u_{\perp} \mathbf{e}_{\perp})}{dt} &= u_{\perp} (\mathbf{e}_2 \cos \phi - \mathbf{e}_1 \sin \phi) \cdot \frac{d(\mathbf{e}_1 \cos \phi + \mathbf{e}_2 \sin \phi)}{dt} + \cancel{\mathbf{e}_{\rho} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{\perp} \frac{du_{\perp}}{dt}} = \\ &= u_{\perp} \left[(\mathbf{e}_2 \cos \phi - \mathbf{e}_1 \sin \phi) \cdot \left(\cos \phi \frac{d\mathbf{e}_1}{dt} - \mathbf{e}_1 \sin \phi \frac{d\phi}{dt} + \sin \phi \frac{d\mathbf{e}_2}{dt} + \mathbf{e}_2 \cos \phi \frac{d\phi}{dt} \right) \right] = \\ &= u_{\perp} \left[\cos^2 \phi \mathbf{e}_2 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_1}{dt} - \cancel{\sin \phi \cos \phi \mathbf{e}_1 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_1}{dt}} + \cancel{\sin \phi \cos \phi \frac{d\phi}{dt} \mathbf{e}_1 \cdot \mathbf{e}_2} + \sin^2 \phi \frac{d\phi}{dt} \mathbf{e}_1 \cdot \mathbf{e}_1 + \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \cancel{\sin \phi \cos \phi \mathbf{e}_2 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_2}{dt}} - \sin^2 \phi \mathbf{e}_1 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_2}{dt} + \cos^2 \phi \frac{d\phi}{dt} \mathbf{e}_2 \cdot \mathbf{e}_2 - \cancel{\sin \phi \cos \phi \frac{d\phi}{dt} \mathbf{e}_1 \cdot \mathbf{e}_2} \right] = \\ &= u_{\perp} \left[(\sin^2 \phi + \cos^2 \phi) \left(\frac{d\phi}{dt} + \mathbf{e}_2 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_1}{dt} \right) - \sin^2 \phi \left(\mathbf{e}_1 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_2}{dt} - \mathbf{e}_2 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_1}{dt} \right) \right] = \\ &= u_{\perp} \left[\frac{d\phi}{dt} + \mathbf{e}_2 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_1}{dt} - \sin^2 \phi \left(\frac{d(\mathbf{e}_1 \cdot \mathbf{e}_2)}{dt} - \cancel{\mathbf{e}_2 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_1}{dt}} + \cancel{\mathbf{e}_2 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_1}{dt}} \right) \right], \end{aligned} \quad (3.108)$$

where in the last-but-one step we added and subtracted the term $\sin^2 \phi \mathbf{e}_2 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_1}{dt}$.

⑤ remains unchanged

Hence, together we have

$$\frac{d\phi}{dt} = -\frac{B}{\epsilon} - \mathbf{e}_2 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_1}{dt} - \frac{1}{u_\perp} \mathbf{e}_\rho \cdot \left(v_\parallel \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt} \right). \quad (3.109)$$

Let us repeat that now we have again six differential equations for modified variables the position of the gyration center \mathbf{R} and for variables in the plane perpendicular to the field lines. Thus we have to solve the following set of equations:

$$\frac{d\mathbf{R}}{dt} = v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E + \epsilon \mathbf{u} \times \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{\mathbf{b}}{B} \right) + \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt}, \quad (3.110)$$

$$\frac{du_\perp}{dt} = -\mathbf{e}_\perp \cdot \left(v_\parallel \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt} \right), \quad (3.111)$$

$$\frac{dv_\parallel}{dt} = \frac{E_\parallel \mathbf{b}}{\epsilon} + (u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp + \mathbf{v}_E) \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt}, \quad (3.112)$$

$$\frac{d\phi}{dt} = -\frac{B}{\epsilon} - \mathbf{e}_2 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_1}{dt} - \frac{1}{u_\perp} \mathbf{e}_\rho \cdot \left(v_\parallel \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt} \right). \quad (3.113)$$

$$(3.114)$$

To proceed further, we need to replace the total time derivative by the derivative along the trajectory

$$\frac{d}{dt} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E + u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp) \cdot \nabla \quad (3.115)$$

Let us do the proper derivation for (3.110). Let's first decompose \mathbf{u} according to formula (3.87) and use relation (3.115) to express d/dt in (3.110):

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\mathbf{R}}{dt} &= v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E + \frac{\epsilon}{B} (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp) \times \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E + u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp) \cdot \nabla \right] \mathbf{b} + \\ &\quad \frac{\epsilon}{B} (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp) \times \mathbf{b} \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E + u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp) \cdot \nabla \right] \left(\frac{1}{B} \right) + \\ &\quad \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E) \cdot \nabla \right] \mathbf{v}_E + \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times (u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{v}_E. \end{aligned} \quad (3.116)$$

Next, we add a zero term

$$\frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{b} \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E) \cdot \nabla \right] v_\parallel = 0 \quad (3.117)$$

to the right hand side of (3.116). Then, we drop several terms containing $\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{b}$ and rearrange the equation to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\mathbf{R}}{dt} &= v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E + \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times D_t (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E) + \frac{\epsilon}{B} v_\parallel \mathbf{b} \times [u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp \cdot \nabla] \mathbf{b} + \\ &\quad \frac{\epsilon u_\perp}{B} \mathbf{e}_\perp \times \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E + u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp) \cdot \nabla \right] \mathbf{b} - \\ &\quad \frac{\epsilon u_\perp}{B^2} \mathbf{e}_\perp \times \mathbf{b} \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E + u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp) \cdot \nabla \right] B + \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times (u_\perp \mathbf{e}_\perp \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{v}_E, \end{aligned} \quad (3.118)$$

where we denote

$$D_t \equiv \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + (v_{\parallel} \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E) \cdot \nabla. \quad (3.119)$$

Finally, we have to average (3.118) over ϕ .

The averaging has a mathematically correct basis. The set of equations (3.110) to (3.113) can be symbolically written in a form

$$\frac{dz}{dt} = f_z(z) = \langle f_z \rangle + \tilde{f}_z, \quad (3.120)$$

where $z \in \{\mathbf{R}, v_{\parallel}, u_{\perp}, \phi\}$. The angled brackets denote the average over the gyroangle ϕ , hence $\langle \cdot \rangle = (2\pi)^{-1} \int d\phi(\cdot)$. The function \tilde{f}_z is periodic in the fast-oscillating gyroangle ϕ . Such separation may always be done. We will show that the oscillating component can be removed to the leading order by means of a small parameters by redefinition of the variables z to

$$\bar{z} = z + \frac{\epsilon}{B} \int_0^{\phi} \tilde{f}_z(\phi') d\phi'. \quad (3.121)$$

From (3.113) we have:

$$\frac{d\phi}{dt} = -\frac{B}{\epsilon} - \mathbf{e}_2 \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{e}_1}{dt} - \frac{1}{u_{\perp}} \mathbf{e}_{\rho} \cdot \left(v_{\parallel} \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt} \right) = -\frac{B}{\epsilon} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^0). \quad (3.122)$$

The total time derivative (3.115) in terms of the guiding centre variables sounds

$$\frac{d}{dt} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \frac{dR}{dt} \frac{\partial}{\partial R} + \frac{dv_{\parallel}}{dt} \frac{\partial}{\partial v_{\parallel}} + \frac{du_{\perp}}{dt} \frac{\partial}{\partial u_{\perp}} + \frac{d\phi}{dt} \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi}. \quad (3.123)$$

The last term is the leading order term, where for $\frac{d\phi}{dt}$ we use (3.122). Note that actually the third term on the right-hand side is a leading order term ($\frac{dv_{\parallel}}{dt} \sim \frac{E_{\parallel}}{\epsilon} \sim \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^{-1})$), however we silently assume here that $E_{\parallel} \sim \mathcal{O}(\epsilon)$, otherwise the assumption of small changes get violated. Hence

$$\frac{d}{dt} = -\frac{B}{\epsilon} \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon^0). \quad (3.124)$$

Note that such an approximation is far from being general and is valid only for the system we investigate.

By applying the leading order time derivative (3.124) to the transformed variables (3.121) we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\bar{z}}{dt} &= \frac{dz}{dt} - \frac{B}{\epsilon} \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi} \frac{\epsilon}{B} \int_{\phi}^{\phi'} \tilde{f}_z(\phi') d\phi' = \\ &= \frac{dz}{dt} - \tilde{f}_z = \langle f_z(z) \rangle + \tilde{f}_z - \tilde{f}_z = \langle f_z(z) \rangle = \langle f_z(\bar{z}) \rangle + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon), \quad \text{Q.E.D.} \end{aligned} \quad (3.125)$$

Let us go back to averaging (3.118) over ϕ . For the terms independent of \mathbf{e}_{\perp} , this step does not lead to any change. On the other hand, terms linear in \mathbf{e}_{\perp} are zero as

$\langle \sin \psi \rangle = \langle \cos \psi \rangle = 0$. The terms quadratic in \mathbf{e}_\perp are non zero in general and have to be treated carefully. Dropping for better readability notation of the mean over ψ , i.e $\langle \cdot \rangle$, on the right hand side, we write

$$\left\langle \frac{d\mathbf{R}}{dt} \right\rangle = v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E + \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times D_t (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E) + \frac{\epsilon u_\perp^2}{B} \mathbf{e}_\perp \times (\mathbf{e}_\perp \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b} - \frac{\epsilon u_\perp^2}{B^2} \mathbf{e}_\perp \times \mathbf{b} (\mathbf{e}_\perp \cdot \nabla) B. \quad (3.126)$$

Now, let us consider the last term in (3.126). Using a notation $\nabla_1 \equiv \mathbf{e}_1 \cdot \nabla$ and $\nabla_2 \equiv \mathbf{e}_2 \cdot \nabla$ we may write:

$$(\mathbf{e}_\perp \times \mathbf{b}) (\mathbf{e}_\perp \cdot \nabla) B = (\mathbf{e}_1 \sin \phi - \mathbf{e}_2 \cos \phi) (\cos \phi \nabla_1 + \sin \phi \nabla_2) B \quad (3.127)$$

Considering $\langle \sin \phi \cos \phi \rangle = 0$ and $\langle \sin^2 \phi \rangle = \langle \cos^2 \phi \rangle = \frac{1}{2}$, averaging of (3.127) over ϕ gives:

$$(\mathbf{e}_\perp \times \mathbf{b}) (\mathbf{e}_\perp \cdot \nabla) B = \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{e}_1 \nabla_2 B - \mathbf{e}_2 \nabla_1 B) = -\frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{b} \times \nabla B). \quad (3.128)$$

Note that an alternative derivation of this relation can be found in Appendix A.1.

Similar approach will be applied to the fourth term of the right hand side of eq. (3.126). In this case, we have to keep in mind that the vector field \mathbf{b} has components (0, 0, 1) at the point \mathbf{R} though, but derivatives of all of its components are non-zero in general. Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{e}_\perp \times (\mathbf{e}_\perp \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b} &= (\mathbf{e}_1 \cos \phi + \mathbf{e}_2 \sin \phi) \times (\cos \phi \nabla_1 + \sin \phi \nabla_2) \mathbf{b} \\ &= (\mathbf{e}_1 \cos \phi + \mathbf{e}_2 \sin \phi) \times [\mathbf{e}_1 (\cos \phi \nabla_1 + \sin \phi \nabla_2) b_1 + \\ &\quad \mathbf{e}_2 (\cos \phi \nabla_1 + \sin \phi \nabla_2) b_2 + \mathbf{e}_3 (\cos \phi \nabla_1 + \sin \phi \nabla_2) b_3] \\ &= \mathbf{e}_1 [\sin \phi (\cos \phi \nabla_1 + \sin \phi \nabla_2) b_3] - \mathbf{e}_2 [\cos \phi (\cos \phi \nabla_1 + \sin \phi \nabla_2) b_3] + \\ &\quad \mathbf{e}_3 [\cos \phi (\cos \phi \nabla_1 + \sin \phi \nabla_2) b_2 - \sin \phi (\cos \phi \nabla_1 + \sin \phi \nabla_2) b_1] \end{aligned} \quad (3.129)$$

Averaging over ϕ then leads to

$$\mathbf{e}_\perp \times (\mathbf{e}_\perp \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b} = \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{e}_1 \nabla_2 - \mathbf{e}_2 \nabla_1) b_3 + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{e}_3 (\nabla_1 b_2 - \nabla_2 b_1). \quad (3.130)$$

First term on the right hand side of eq. (3.130) may be neglected as $\nabla_i b_3 = \mathcal{O}((\nabla_i b_{[1,2]})^2)$.⁴

⁴The fact that $\nabla_i b_3 = \mathcal{O}((\nabla_i b_{[1,2]})^2)$ is a consequence of normalisation $|\mathbf{b}| = 1$. Vector \mathbf{b} at a small displacement $\delta \mathbf{R}$ from \mathbf{R} can be expressed by means of Taylor series:

$$\mathbf{b}(\mathbf{R} + \delta \mathbf{R}) = \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{R}) + \delta \mathbf{R} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{R}) + \mathcal{O}(\delta R^2). \quad (3.131)$$

Denoting $\mathbf{b}' \equiv \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{R} + \delta \mathbf{R})$ and $\delta b_i \equiv \delta \mathbf{R} \cdot \nabla b_i(\mathbf{R})$, we write $\mathbf{b}' = \mathbf{b} + \delta b_1 \mathbf{e}_1 + \delta b_2 \mathbf{e}_2 + \delta b_3 \mathbf{e}_3$. We further consider $\mathbf{b} = (0, 0, 1)$ and both \mathbf{b} and \mathbf{b}' be normalised. Hence $|\mathbf{b}'|^2 = 1$ which implies

$$|\mathbf{b}'|^2 = 1 = \left| \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \delta b_1 \\ \delta b_2 \\ \delta b_3 \end{pmatrix} \right|^2 = \delta b_1^2 + \delta b_2^2 + (1 + \delta b_3)^2 \sim \delta b_1^2 + \delta b_2^2 + \delta b_3^2 + 2\delta b_3 + 1. \quad (3.132)$$

and, therefore, $2\delta b_3 \approx -\delta b_1^2 - \delta b_2^2 - \delta b_3^2 \sim \mathcal{O}(\delta b_{[1,2]}^2)$, Q.E.D.

The second term on the right hand side of eq. (3.130) can be rewritten in the vector notation:

$$\mathbf{e}_\perp \times (\mathbf{e}_\perp \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b} = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{e}_3 (\mathbf{e}_3 \cdot \nabla \times \mathbf{b}) = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{b} (\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla \times \mathbf{b}) , \quad (3.133)$$

where we used the identity $\mathbf{b} \equiv \mathbf{e}_3$. Note that an alternative derivation of this relation can be found in Appendix A.1. Inserting (3.128) and (3.133) gives

$$\left\langle \frac{d\mathbf{R}}{dt} \right\rangle = v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E + \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times D_t (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E) + \frac{\epsilon u_\perp^2}{2B} (\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla \times \mathbf{b}) \mathbf{b} + \frac{\epsilon u_\perp^2}{2B^2} \mathbf{b} \times \nabla B . \quad (3.134)$$

This is the equation for the guiding centre motion. It contains all drift we discussed in the previous chapters and much more.

- ① This term represents the movement along the field lines. Local vector \mathbf{b} is curved in (\mathbf{x}, t) space, nevertheless the motion of the particle is always dominantly parallel to the local vector of the magnetic induction.
- ② This is the E-B drift.
- ③ This term contains the generalised curvature drift (term $\sim \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla)(v_\parallel \mathbf{b})^5$), the polarisation drift⁶ and the effects of the non-homogeneous electric field.
- ④ This is the correction to the parallel current: $\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla \times \mathbf{b} = \mu_0 j_\parallel / B$.
- ⑤ This is the grad-B drift.

Similar equations might be derived for mean values of time derivatives of velocity

⁵Deriving it more explicitly, lets assume the parallel velocity to be constant (or weakly variable), then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_c &= \frac{qv_\parallel^2}{mB} [\mathbf{b} \times (\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{b}] = \frac{qv_\parallel^2}{mB^2} \mathbf{B} \times [\mathbf{b} \cdot (\mathbf{e}_1 \nabla b_1 + \mathbf{e}_2 \nabla b_2 + \mathbf{b} \nabla b_3)] = \\ &= \frac{qv_\parallel^2}{mB^2} \mathbf{B} \times \nabla b_3 = -\frac{qv_\parallel^2}{mB^2 R^2} \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{R}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.135)$$

where we noted that in the local cylindrical coordinates, b_3 is along the constant radius R and in order to fulfill $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$ in a vacuum the field must decrease as $1/R$ and hence the gradient of the field must decrease as $-1/R^2 \mathbf{R}$. This relation is exactly the same as (3.51).

⁶Let us handle the third term of 3.134 a little more in detail, in each step always by focusing to one particular term, while leaving the remaining terms unevaluated.

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times D_t (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E) &= \frac{\epsilon}{B} \mathbf{b} \times \frac{d\mathbf{v}_E}{dt} + \mathcal{A} = \frac{m}{qB^2} \mathbf{B} \times \frac{d}{dt} \frac{\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}}{B^2} + \mathcal{A} = \frac{m}{qB^4} \mathbf{B} \times \left(\frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} \times \mathbf{B} \right) + \mathcal{B} = \\ &= \frac{m}{qB^4} \left(\mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{B} \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} - \mathbf{B} \cdot \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} \mathbf{B} \right) + \mathcal{B} = \frac{m}{qB^2} \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} + \mathcal{C} = \frac{\text{sgn } q}{\omega_c B} \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} + \mathcal{C}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.136)$$

where the first term is the polarisation drift

components (see Appendix A.2), namely:

$$\left\langle \frac{dv_{\parallel}}{dt} \right\rangle = \frac{E_{\parallel}}{\epsilon} - \frac{u_{\perp}^2}{2B} \nabla_{\parallel} B + \mathbf{v}_E \cdot D_t \mathbf{b} \quad (3.137)$$

$$\left\langle \frac{du_{\perp}}{dt} \right\rangle = \frac{v_{\parallel} u_{\perp}}{2B} \nabla_{\parallel} B - \frac{u_{\perp}}{2} (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}_E - \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla_{\parallel} \mathbf{v}_E) \quad (3.138)$$

$$\left\langle \frac{d\phi}{dt} \right\rangle = -\frac{B}{\epsilon} - \mathbf{e}_2 \cdot D_t \mathbf{e}_1 - \frac{v_{\parallel}}{2} \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla \times (v_{\parallel} \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E) \quad (3.139)$$

The equations we obtained are still expressed in the phase variables (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) . In order to obtain the closed set of equations, equations (3.134) to (3.139) need to be expressed in guiding centre variables $(\mathbf{R}, v_{\parallel}, u_{\perp}, \phi)$. It can be done only approximately. First, the fields \mathbf{E} and \mathbf{B} (and consequently vectors \mathbf{b} , \mathbf{e}_1 , \mathbf{e}_2 , and \mathbf{v}_E) at the particle position are expanded in a Taylor series around the position of the guiding center. For instance:

$$\mathbf{b}(\mathbf{x}, t) = \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{R}, t) + \boldsymbol{\rho} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{R}, t) + \dots = \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{R}, t) + \epsilon \frac{u_{\perp}}{B} \mathbf{e}_{\rho} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{R}, t) + \dots \quad (3.140)$$

For the averaged variables even the first order terms vanish, because $\langle \mathbf{e}_{\rho} \rangle = 0$ and thus the system of equations keeps to the leading order the same shape also for the guiding centre variables.

3.7 Magnetic mirrors

We deliberately did not study the motion of the testing particle in the case of inhomogeneous magnetic field with $\nabla |\mathbf{B}| \parallel \mathbf{B}$. We will derive some useful properties of this configuration of the magnetic field now. Let us consider the axisymmetric configuration in cylindrical coordinates, where $\mathbf{B} = (B_r, B_{\varphi}, B_z)$ and $B_{\varphi} = 0$ and $\partial/\partial\varphi = 0$. From the Gauss's law for magnetism

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} r B_r + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial B_{\varphi}}{\partial \varphi} + \frac{\partial B_z}{\partial z} = 0 \quad (3.141)$$

we immediately see that

$$r B_r = - \int_0^r r' \frac{\partial B_z}{\partial z} dr'. \quad (3.142)$$

When assuming that we know $\frac{\partial B_z}{\partial z}$ on the axis and consider only particle motions close enough to the axis, we may neglect the radial dependence of this term and obtain

$$r B_r \sim - \left[\frac{\partial B_z}{\partial z} \right]_{r=0} \int_0^r r' dr' = -\frac{1}{2} r^2 \left[\frac{\partial B_z}{\partial z} \right]_{r=0}, \quad (3.143)$$

and hence

$$B_r \sim -\frac{1}{2} r \left[\frac{\partial B_z}{\partial z} \right]_{r=0}. \quad (3.144)$$

Thus we have an additional component to the Lorentz force, hence we may expect a drift. It will be a grad-B drift, but not the radial one, since $\partial B/\partial\varphi = 0$. The Lorentz force is

$$\begin{aligned} F &= q\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B} = q \begin{pmatrix} v_r \\ v_\varphi \\ v_z \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} B_r \\ B_\varphi \\ B_z \end{pmatrix} = q \begin{pmatrix} v_\varphi B_z - v_z B_\varphi \\ v_z B_r - v_r B_z \\ v_r B_\varphi - v_\varphi B_r \end{pmatrix} = \\ &= q \begin{pmatrix} v_\varphi B_z^{(1)} \\ v_z B_r^{(2)} - v_r B_z^{(3)} \\ -v_\varphi B_r^{(4)} \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.145)$$

Terms ① and ③ are not interesting, as they are responsible for the Larmor rotation. Term ② vanishes around the axis, however even when we had relaxed the assumptions, this term would only cause the normal grad-B drift. Term ④ is something new.

Hence we have an additional force

$$F_z = -qv_\varphi B_r = \frac{1}{2}qv_\varphi r \frac{\partial B_z}{\partial z}, \quad (3.146)$$

which we (in agreement with the procedure already used before) average over one Larmor rotation. By taking into account that $v_\varphi = -\text{sgn} qv_\perp$, $r = r_L = v_\perp/\omega_c$ and $\omega_c = q\text{sgn} qB/m$ we have

$$F_z = -\frac{1}{2}qv_\perp \text{sgn} q \frac{v_\perp m}{q\text{sgn} qB} \frac{\partial B_z}{\partial z} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{mv_\perp^2}{B} \frac{\partial B_z}{\partial z} = -\mu \frac{\partial B_z}{\partial z}, \quad (3.147)$$

where $\mu = 1/2mv_\perp^2/B$ is the *magnetic moment*. This equation may be generalised, when we identify z direction with the *parallel direction*, hence

$$F_{\parallel} = -\mu \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial \mathbf{s}} = -\mu \nabla_{\parallel} \mathbf{B}, \quad (3.148)$$

where $d\mathbf{s}$ is the trajectory element.

We will further show that during the particle's motion, its r_L changes, but its magnetic moment remains invariant. First we handle the parallel component of the equation of motion

$$m \frac{d\mathbf{v}_{\parallel}}{dt} = -\mu \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial \mathbf{s}} \quad (3.149)$$

by multiplying it by \mathbf{v}_{\parallel} :

$$m\mathbf{v}_{\parallel} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{v}_{\parallel}}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{1}{2}mv_{\parallel}^2 \right) = -\mu \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial \mathbf{s}} \cdot \mathbf{v}_{\parallel} = -\mu \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial \mathbf{s}} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{s}}{dt} = -\mu \frac{d\mathbf{B}}{dt}. \quad (3.150)$$

The energy conservation law gives

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{1}{2}mv_{\parallel}^2 + \frac{1}{2}mv_{\perp}^2 \right) = \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{1}{2}mv_{\parallel}^2 + \mu B \right) = 0, \quad (3.151)$$

where we used $\frac{1}{2}mv_{\perp}^2 = \mu B$. Finally we subtract (3.150) and (3.151) to have

$$0 = -\mu \frac{dB}{dt} + \frac{d}{dt}\mu B = -\mu \frac{dB}{dt} + \mu \frac{dB}{dt} + B \frac{d\mu}{dt} \quad (3.152)$$

and hence

$$\frac{d\mu}{dt} = 0. \quad (3.153)$$

The magnetic moment remains invariant. Unfortunately, this conclusion cannot be considered general, as we took very restrictive assumptions at the beginning. It is interesting to study to what extent is the magnetic moment conservation valid. Here we will go back to the guiding centre equations we derived in the previous section. Let's work with (3.138) in a form

$$\frac{du_{\perp}}{dt} = \frac{v_{\parallel}u_{\perp}}{2B} \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla B - \frac{u_{\perp}}{2} (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}} - \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla_{\parallel} \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}}) + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon). \quad (3.154)$$

Let's trim the terms one-by-one (there are some errors in the following)

Ⓐ

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}} &= \nabla \cdot \frac{\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}}{B^2} = \frac{1}{B^2} [\mathbf{B} \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{E}) - \mathbf{E} \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{B})] = \\ &= -\frac{1}{B^2} \mathbf{B} \cdot \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} - \frac{1}{B^2} \mathbf{E} \cdot (\nabla \times B \mathbf{b}) = \\ &= -\frac{1}{B} \mathbf{b} \cdot \left[\mathbf{b} \frac{\partial B}{\partial t} + B \frac{\partial \mathbf{b}}{\partial t} \right] + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon) = -\frac{1}{B} \frac{\partial B}{\partial t} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon), \end{aligned} \quad (3.155)$$

where we used the assumption that $\mathbf{E} \sim \mathcal{O}(\epsilon)$ and the already proven relation that $\mathbf{b} \cdot \frac{\partial \mathbf{b}}{\partial t} = 0$. Let us remind that the small parameter $\epsilon = m/q$ was used for expansion to Taylor series.

Ⓑ

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla_{\parallel} \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}} &= \mathbf{b} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}}) = \mathbf{b} \cdot [\nabla(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}}) - \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{b}] = \\ &= -\mathbf{b} \cdot \left(\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}} \cdot \nabla \frac{\mathbf{B}}{B} \right) = -\frac{1}{B} \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla B) - \mathbf{b} \cdot \left(\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}} \cdot B \nabla \frac{1}{B} \right) = \\ &= -\frac{1}{2B} \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}} \cdot \nabla_{\parallel} B + \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}} \cdot \frac{\nabla B}{B}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.156)$$

where the first term vanishes, because $\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}} \perp \nabla_{\parallel} B$.

Hence all together (3.154) reads

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{du_{\perp}}{dt} &= \frac{v_{\parallel}u_{\perp}}{2B} \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla B + \frac{u_{\perp}}{2} \frac{1}{B} \frac{\partial B}{\partial t} + \frac{u_{\perp}}{2} \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}} \cdot \frac{\nabla B}{B} + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon) = \\ &= \frac{u_{\perp}}{2} \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + (v_{\parallel} \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{E}}) \cdot \nabla \right] B + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon) = \frac{u_{\perp}}{2B} D_t B + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon), \end{aligned} \quad (3.157)$$

where again D_t is the full time derivative along the guiding centre trajectory.

Hence by taking the time derivative of the magnetic moment $\mu = u_{\perp}^2/2B$ and by using (3.157) we have

$$\frac{d\mu}{dt} = \frac{u_{\perp} \frac{du_{\perp}}{dt}}{B} + \frac{u_{\perp}^2}{2B} \frac{d}{dt} \frac{1}{B} = \frac{u_{\perp}^2}{2B^2} D_t B + \mathcal{O}(\epsilon) - \frac{u_{\perp}^2}{2B^2} \frac{dB}{dt} = \mathcal{O}(\epsilon). \quad (3.158)$$

Hence the magnetic moment is invariant when the changes of the fields are small (the assumption of $\mathbf{E} \sim \mathcal{O}(\epsilon)$).

A measurable consequence of the magnetic moment conservation is the effect of *magnetic mirrors*. Let's imagine that a charged particle moves (due to the thermal motion for example) from the weak into the stronger magnetic field. It "sees" the stronger field, hence its Larmor radius decreases and perpendicular velocity increases, so that μ remains constant. But also the total kinetic energy must be conserved, hence the parallel velocity decreases as the particle enters the stronger field. For B large enough the parallel velocity drops to zero and the particle suffers from the reflection back to the weaker field.

The reflection is not perfect. For example particles with originally $v_{\perp} = 0$ do not have magnetic moments and thus penetrate the "magnetic trap". They "do not feel" the Lorentz force along the magnetic field lines. Similar behaviour may be expected for particles with small ratio v_{\perp}/v_{\parallel} . Is there a limit to this ratio?

Let's assume that in the region of the weak field B_0 , the particle has the following values of velocity components: $v_{\perp} = v_{\perp,0}$ and $v_{\parallel} = v_{\parallel,0}$. In the place of reflection we have $v_{\perp} = v'_{\perp}$ and $v_{\parallel} = 0$ and the field has the induction B' . Since

$$\mu = \text{const} = \frac{1}{2} m v_{\perp,0}^2 / B_0 = \frac{1}{2} m v'_{\perp} / B' \quad \text{and} \quad v_{\perp}^2 = v_{\perp,0}^2 + v_{\parallel,0}^2 \equiv v_0^2, \quad (3.159)$$

we have

$$\frac{B_0}{B'} = \frac{v_{\perp,0}^2}{v_{\perp}^2} = \frac{v_{\perp,0}^2}{v_0^2} = \sin^2 \vartheta, \quad (3.160)$$

where ϑ is a *pitch angle* in the region of the weak field. For ϑ small the particle does not reflect. Hence for some $B' > B_{\max}$ the particle does not escape and reflect. This allows to set the condition for the minimal pitch angle for the particle to reflect. From the equation above it becomes

$$\sin^2 \vartheta_{\max} = \frac{B_0}{B_{\max}}. \quad (3.161)$$

For $\vartheta > \vartheta_{\max}$ the particle reflects. If we plot all three components of velocity for the particles, we find that ϑ_{\max} creates a cone in the phase space. Particles located inside this cone will escape the reflection. Hence the name *loss cone*. Note that the shape of the loss cone depends neither on charge of the particle nor on its mass.

3.8 Adiabatic invariants

Let's have a hamiltonian of the system $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q})$ and a system of equations of motion

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{q}}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial \mathbf{p}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial \mathbf{p}}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial \mathcal{H}}{\partial \mathbf{q}}. \quad (3.162)$$

Should any of the coordinates q_i be *cyclic*, thus

$$q_i(t) = q_i(t + T), \quad (3.163)$$

where T is the period, then

$$\oint p_i dq_i = \text{const} \quad (3.164)$$

is the *integral of motion*. For example, in case of the mathematical pendulum, the deviation $\varphi(t) = \varphi_0 \cos \omega t$ is cyclic with period of $T = 2\pi/\omega$. Lets define the canonical pair $q = l\varphi$ and $p = ml\dot{\varphi}$, where m and l are the mass and the length of the pendulum, respectively. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^T p dq &= \int_0^T (-ml\varphi_0\omega \sin \omega t)(-l\varphi_0\omega \sin \omega t) dt = \\ &= ml^2\varphi_0^2\omega \int_0^T \sin^2 \omega t d(\omega t) = \pi ml^2\varphi_0\omega = \text{const} \end{aligned} \quad (3.165)$$

When the integral of motion contains a parameter, which is slowly variable (slowly means that the time scale of the change of this parameter is much larger than period T of the cyclic coordinate), it turns into the *adiabatic invariant*. In case of the pendulum, the invariant is conserved when we slowly change the length of the pendulum. Clearly, when l increases, ω must decrease in order for the invariant to remain constant. That is true only if the time scale, with which the length of the pendulum changes, is much longer than the period T of the cyclic coordinate. Should the time scale of the length changes be too short, the system behaves in a completely different regime.

3.8.1 First adiabatic invariant

Charged particles moving in the background electric and magnetic field have coordinate ϕ , which is obviously cyclic and connected to Larmor rotation, see (3.87). The canonically conjugated momentum is an *angular momentum* $p = mv_{\perp}r_L$. Hence

$$J_1 = \oint p_i dq_i = \int_0^{2\pi} mv_{\perp}r_L d\phi = 2\pi v_{\perp} \frac{mv_{\perp}}{q \operatorname{sgn} q B} = \frac{4\pi m}{q \operatorname{sgn} q} \mu = \text{const}. \quad (3.166)$$

It basically proves what we have derived in the previous chapters: for small changes is the magnetic moment μ an adiabatic invariant.

There are some important situations in which the magnetic moment is not invariant:

(Figure here)

Figure 3.7: To the second adiabatic invariant.

- *Magnetic pumping*: If the collision frequency is larger than the pump frequency, μ is no longer conserved. In particular, collisions allow net heating by transferring some of the perpendicular energy to parallel energy.
- *Cyclotron heating*: If \mathbf{B} is oscillated at the cyclotron frequency, the condition for adiabatic invariance is violated and heating is possible. In particular, the induced electric field rotates in phase with some of the particles and continuously accelerates them.
- *Magnetic cusps*: The magnetic field at the center of a cusp vanishes, so the cyclotron frequency is automatically smaller than the rate of *any* changes. Thus the magnetic moment is not conserved and particles are scattered relatively easily into the loss cone.

3.8.2 Second adiabatic invariant

Let us consider a system with two magnetic mirrors and the particles out of the loss cone, thus cycling from one mirror to another. This motion is cyclic, thus this motion would in the normal system have an motion integral $I = \oint_a^b mv_{\parallel} ds$. In plasmas the motions of particles are subjects of drifts, hence the absolute periodicity is violated. We would assume that the motion integral becomes an adiabatic invariant, when the effects of the drifts are much smaller than the dominant motion of the system (reflection between two mirrors).

We will derive an *longitudinal invariant* J , which is defined only between two consecutive reflections, hence

$$J_2 = \int_a^b v_{\parallel} ds \quad (3.167)$$

and we will show that J is invariant in the stationary magnetic field. Further, we will generalise this case when $\frac{\partial B}{\partial t}$ is small. When the distance between the two mirrors shortens, the reflecting particles gain kinetic energy, which is the basic of the *Fermi acceleration*.

Let's study the system of an asymmetrical magnetosphere, when due to the drifts the particle occupies different geometries ("a different field line"). The particle drifts from one field line to another, which has a different curvature R_k in time Δt (see Fig. 3.7). Then for small angles we have

$$\frac{\delta s}{R_k} = \frac{\delta s'}{R'_k}. \quad (3.168)$$

The fractional change of the trajectory is

$$\frac{\delta s' - \delta s}{\Delta t \delta s} = \frac{R'_k - R_k}{\Delta t R_k} = \mathbf{v}_{gc} \cdot \frac{\mathbf{R}_k}{R_k^2} = \frac{1}{\delta s} \frac{\Delta \delta s}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{\delta s} \frac{d\delta s}{dt}, \quad (3.169)$$

where we used the radial component of the curvature drift to estimate the speed of jump between the field lines

$$\left| \frac{R'_k - R'_k}{\Delta t} \right| = \mathbf{v}_{\text{gc}} \cdot \frac{\mathbf{R}_k}{R_k}. \quad (3.170)$$

We studied the drift speed in the curved magnetic field earlier, thus we only apply results from (3.67) here:

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{gs}} = \frac{1}{2} \text{sgn } q v_{\perp} r_L \frac{\mathbf{B} \times \nabla B}{B^2} + \frac{m v_{\parallel}^2}{q} \frac{\mathbf{R}_k \times \mathbf{B}}{R_k^2 B^2}. \quad (3.171)$$

The second term does not have any component along \mathbf{R}_k , thus we do not have to consider it further. Hence

$$\frac{1}{\delta s} \frac{d\delta s}{dt} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{m}{q} \frac{v_{\parallel}^2}{B^3} (\mathbf{B} \times \nabla B) \cdot \frac{\mathbf{R}_k}{R_k}, \quad (3.172)$$

which represents the fractional change of δs from the particle's point of view. Further, we will investigate the change of v_{\parallel} . Let's use the total energy of the particle W ,

$$W = \frac{1}{2} m v_{\parallel}^2 + \frac{1}{2} m v_{\perp}^2 = \frac{1}{2} m v_{\parallel}^2 + \mu B = W_{\parallel} + W_{\perp}. \quad (3.173)$$

The parallel velocity is then $v_{\parallel} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{m}(W - \mu B)}$ and its time derivative

$$\frac{dv_{\parallel}}{dt} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\frac{2}{m}(W - \mu B)}} \left(-\mu \frac{dB}{dt} \right) \frac{2}{m} \quad (3.174)$$

and the fractional change of v_{\parallel} is

$$\frac{\frac{dv_{\parallel}}{dt}}{v_{\parallel}} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{\mu \frac{dB}{dt}}{W - \mu B} = -\frac{\mu \frac{dB}{dt}}{m v_{\parallel}^2}, \quad (3.175)$$

where we used (3.173) to express $W - \mu B$. The field \mathbf{B} is stationary, but its derivative (seen by the moving particle) is generally not vanishing due to the drift :

$$\frac{dB}{dt} = \frac{dB}{dR} \frac{dr}{dt} = \mathbf{v}_{\text{gc}} \cdot \nabla B = \frac{m v_{\parallel}^2}{q} \frac{\mathbf{R}_k \times \mathbf{B}}{R_k^2 B^2} \cdot \nabla B. \quad (3.176)$$

We insert this useful relation into (3.175) and have

$$\frac{\frac{dv_{\parallel}}{dt}}{v_{\parallel}} = -\frac{\mu}{q} \frac{(\mathbf{R}_k \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \nabla B}{R_k^2 B^2} = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{m v_{\perp}^2}{B q} \frac{(\mathbf{B} \times \nabla B) \cdot \mathbf{R}_k}{R_k^2 B^2}. \quad (3.177)$$

The goal is to evaluate the fractional change of $v_{\parallel} \delta s$ during the exchange of trajectory:

$$\frac{1}{v_{\parallel} \delta s} \frac{d(v_{\parallel} \delta s)}{dt} = \frac{1}{\delta s} \frac{d\delta s}{dt} + \frac{1}{v_{\parallel}} \frac{dv_{\parallel}}{dt}. \quad (3.178)$$

The first term we already evaluated in (3.172) and the second in (3.177). The both equal except for the sign, hence

$$\frac{1}{v_{\parallel} \delta s} \frac{d(v_{\parallel} \delta s)}{dt} = 0 \quad (3.179)$$

and $v_{\parallel} \delta s$ remains constant when the particle exchanges the field line. This is not the claim we wanted to prove, which was that $J = \int_a^b v_{\parallel} \delta s$ is constant. However, we may split this integral into three terms,

$$J_2 = \int_a^{a'} v_{\parallel} \delta s + \int_{a'}^{b'} v_{\parallel} \delta s + \int_{b'}^b v_{\parallel} \delta s, \quad (3.180)$$

representing the different reflection points for the different field lines. When a and a' are close and b and b' are also close, then the contributions of the first and third terms are negligible and J remains approximately invariant. The smallness of these boundary contributions are emphasised by the fact that v_{\parallel} is small near the reflection points (where the total velocity amplitude is dominated by the perpendicular component).

By replacing the local longitudinal velocity by its average $\langle v_{\parallel} \rangle$ over the distance between the two reflection points L , we have

$$J_2 = \langle v_{\parallel} \rangle L, \quad (3.181)$$

which is invariant. When L decreases, $\langle v_{\parallel} \rangle$ increases, which is the basic of the Fermi acceleration. High-energetic particles of the cosmic radiation of the galactic origin were mostly accelerated by this mechanism, e.g. by repeated reflections between magnetic field embedded in the interstellar gaseous clouds, which moved towards each other.

In an axially nonsymmetric magnetosphere – such as the magnetosphere of the Earth – the gravitation drift drives the ring current, which drives the “jumping of the particles between different field lines”. The second adiabatic invariant is conserved on both sides of the magnetosphere.

3.8.3 Third adiabatic invariant

This adiabatic invariant is defined for axisymmetrical magnetic field, when the curvature drift is also cyclical. Then the total magnetic flux enclosed by a drift surface

$$J_3 = \Phi = \int \mathbf{B} \cdot d\mathbf{S} \quad (3.182)$$

is invariant. It is associated with the periodic motion of mirror-trapped particles drifting around the axis of the system. The particle moves on the surface which adjust itself to variations in the magnetic field so that the flux enclosed by this surface remains constant.

When the waves in the Earth’s ionosphere (usually having long periods) are in resonance with the drifting particles, the energy of the drift converts to the energy of these waves. The drift is relatively slow, thus in practice, Φ is not conserved in real systems.

3.9 van Allen radiation belts

We will apply what we have just learned to a realistic problem, which is the particle trapping in the axially symmetric magnetosphere. This is the reason why there are radiation (known as van Allen) belts in the Earth's magnetosphere and also in the magnetospheres of other planets. We do not aim to solve the full problem, we aim more to show the basic principles using a rather simplistic approach. We will search for allowed trajectories of the particles.

Let us assume the axially symmetric magnetic field with components

$$\mathbf{B} = (B_R(R, z), 0, B_z(R, z)), \quad (3.183)$$

where B_r and B_z are the radial and vertical components of the magnetic field induction vector. The Gauss law must be fulfilled also in this case, hence

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0 = \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial}{\partial R} R B_R + \frac{\partial B_z}{\partial z}. \quad (3.184)$$

Such condition is fulfilled when the radial and vertical components of the magnetic field are given as

$$B_z = -\frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial F}{\partial R} \quad \text{and} \quad B_R = \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial F}{\partial z}. \quad (3.185)$$

The function F is called the flux function and they can be explicitly computed for the given configuration of the magnetic field. E.g., for a dipole

$$F = \mathcal{M} \frac{R^2}{(R^2 + z^2)^{3/2}}, \quad (3.186)$$

where \mathcal{M} is the magnetic moment of a dipole⁷. For now we can take F as a given function, by taking the spatial derivatives of which we obtain the magnetic induction components. It may easily be shown that definition (3.185) fulfils the Gauss law.

Now let us deal with the particle equation of motion in the cylindrical coordinates and we will be interested in the azimuthal component of it:

$$\left(m \frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} \right)_\varphi = q (v_z B_R - v_R B_z) = \frac{q}{R} \left(v_z \frac{\partial F}{\partial z} + v_R \frac{\partial F}{\partial R} \right) = \frac{q}{R} \frac{dF}{dt}, \quad (3.187)$$

where we used $v_z = \frac{dz}{dt}$ and $v_R = \frac{dR}{dt}$ and assumed that $\frac{\partial F}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial F}{\partial \varphi} = 0$.

Let us look at the coordinate system we have. We defined two linear coordinates R (radial coordinate, distance from the axis) and z (height) and one angular (the azimuthal angle) φ . The studied particle has a position vector \mathbf{r} . Obviously, the unity vector which is tangential to the azimuth φ at the given point is parallel to the cross-product of the position vector \mathbf{r} and the unity vector in the z -direction, hence

$$\mathbf{e}_\varphi \propto \mathbf{e}_z \times \mathbf{r}. \quad (3.188)$$

⁷For instance, the dipole magnetic moment of the Earth is $\mathcal{M}_E = 8 \times 10^{15} \text{T m}^3$.

But what is its amplitude? This we easily determine from the amplitude of the cross product, which is

$$|z||r|\sin\vartheta = R, \quad (3.189)$$

where ϑ is an angle between \mathbf{e}_z and \mathbf{r} (also termed as co-latitude). Altogether we have

$$R\mathbf{e}_\varphi = \mathbf{e}_z \times \mathbf{r}. \quad (3.190)$$

Then

$$Rv_\varphi = R\mathbf{e}_\varphi \cdot \mathbf{v} = (\mathbf{e}_z \times \mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{v}. \quad (3.191)$$

Now we compute the time derivative of this expression. We have

$$\frac{d}{dt}Rv_\varphi = (\mathbf{e}_z \times \mathbf{r}) \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} + (\mathbf{e}_z \times \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt}) \cdot \mathbf{v}. \quad (3.192)$$

The second term vanishes as $\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = \mathbf{v}$ and the result of the cross product is perpendicular to \mathbf{v} . By using (3.190) we have

$$\frac{d}{dt}Rv_\varphi = R\mathbf{e}_\varphi \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} = R \left(\frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} \right)_\varphi. \quad (3.193)$$

Finally let us investigate the expression

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left(Rv_\varphi - \frac{qF}{m} \right) = R \frac{dv_\varphi}{dt} - \frac{qF}{m} = 0, \quad (3.194)$$

where we used (3.193) and (3.187). Hence

$$Rv_\varphi - \frac{qF}{m} = I_1 \quad (3.195)$$

is a motion integral.

Another motion integral is the total kinetic energy (we assumed that no dissipation takes place), which may be written in a simplistic form as

$$v^2 = I_2^2 \quad (3.196)$$

Certainly, $v_\varphi^2 \leq v^2$, as v_φ is only one component of \mathbf{v} .

Then

$$R|v_\varphi| \leq |v|R \quad \rightarrow \quad |I_1 + \frac{qF}{m}| \leq RI_2. \quad (3.197)$$

We will not solve this inequation explicitly but will rather point out some general properties of it by drawing a graph (see Fig. 3.8). On the horizontal axis let us represent the radial coordinate R , on the vertical axis then the value of the expression $\frac{qF}{m}(R, \vartheta)$, where ϑ again represents the co-latitude (**how precisely did we get to the spherical coordinates – derive it from stating the F for the dipole**). The solutions for a given combination of q , F , and m will show as the hyperbola-like curves for varying ϑ in the canvas. The degenerate limiting $\vartheta = 0$ curve coincides with the coordinate axes.

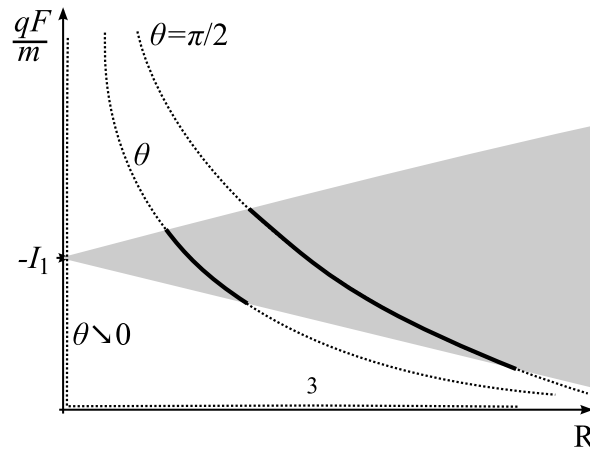


Figure 3.8: A graphical solution of the trapped particles in the axisymmetrical magnetosphere. In the shadowed regions, the particles are allowed due to the inequality (3.197). For a given ϑ , the particle may move along the given field line. Hence the total allowed region is given by the intersection of the two (denoted by the solid thick line). Such a region obviously depends on the co-latitude and the energy of the particle.

The remaining terms in the expression will create a sector on the canvas, apex of which will be at a coordinate $(0, I_1)$ and the opening angle will correspond to I_2 (the larger the more is the sector opened). Particles with a given kinetic energy and the value of I_1 are now allowed to move in this diagram freely along their corresponding $\frac{qF}{m}$ -line for a given ϑ , but only in the limits determined by the sector.

This simplistic approach gave us some important physical predictions. Particles with larger speeds are allowed to move within the larger range of radial distances. At lower co-latitudes (hence near the poles) the particles are in general located nearer the surface (lower R) and the extent of their allowed radial coordinate is lower (the belt is thinner) than near the equator. These predictions are fully consistent with the observations of the real van Allen radiation belts.

Chapter 4

Plasma as fluid

In Section 1.5 we derived the moments of the Boltzmann equation by neglecting the particle distribution function and by considering the physical parameters averaged over the ensemble of the particles. Plasma may be treated the same way, however, we have to bear in mind that the individual particles are charged and thus must follow additional set of physical laws – the Maxwell equations.

4.1 Double-fluid approximation in physics of plasmas

When we consider electrons and ions non-interacting or at least weakly interacting, we may separate the particle distribution function to two terms, describing independently electrons and ions. Hence we have two independent “fluids” in the plasma, the electron fluid (described by $n_e, \mathbf{u}_e, p_e, \dots$) and the ion fluid (fully described by $n_i, \mathbf{u}_i, p_i, \dots$). For each type of particles α , where $\alpha \in \{e, i\}$ we have the equation of continuity, the Euler equation, and the equation of state, hence

$$\frac{\partial n_\alpha}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (n_\alpha \mathbf{u}_\alpha) = 0 \quad (4.1)$$

$$m_\alpha n_\alpha \left[\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_\alpha}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u}_\alpha \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}_\alpha \right] = q_\alpha n_\alpha (\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u}_\alpha \times \mathbf{B}) - \nabla p_\alpha \quad (4.2)$$

$$p_\alpha = C(m_\alpha n_\alpha)^{\gamma_\alpha}, \quad (4.3)$$

where γ_α is the ratio of specific heats and C is a constant. This set of equations must be accompanied by the Maxwell equations

$$\varepsilon_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = n_i q_i + n_e q_e \quad (4.4)$$

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} \quad (4.5)$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0 \quad (4.6)$$

$$\frac{1}{\mu_0} \nabla \times \mathbf{B} = n_i q_i \mathbf{u}_i + n_e q_e \mathbf{u}_e + \varepsilon_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t}. \quad (4.7)$$

That is all together 18 equations (by considering the vector equations as a triplet) for 16 variables (for each electrons and ions we have n , u_x , u_y , u_z , and p and we must add components of the magnetic and electric fields). The disharmony is only apparent. Equations (4.4) and (4.6) play the role of boundary conditions and are not independent from (4.5) and (4.7). For instance, when we apply the operator of divergence to (4.5), we have

$$\nabla \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{E}) = -\nabla \cdot \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}. \quad (4.8)$$

The left-hand side is a vanishing vector identity, hence

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = \text{const}, \quad (4.9)$$

and our universe is set up so that this constant equals to zero. The physical meaning of this boundary condition is that there are no magnetic charges.

The equation of state (4.3) requires some commentary. Note that when dropping the index α , we define the mass density as $\rho = mn$. The *polytropic* equation of state in the new variable reads

$$p = C\rho^\gamma \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\nabla p}{p} = \gamma \frac{\nabla \rho}{\rho}. \quad (4.10)$$

The value of γ varies with the type of the process in question. E.g. for the isothermic compression, we have $\gamma = 1$. For the adiabatic expansion, $\gamma = (N + 2)/N$, where N is the number of degrees of freedom. Note that $\gamma = 5/3$ for the adiabatic process of the ideal gas.

4.1.1 Plasma approximation

In solving the problems using the fluid approximation, we often use the *plasma approximation*. That essentially means that we neglect the possible concentration of charges occurring on small scales, and consider large scales only. Due to the requirement on the bulk neutrality of plasma, we must assume that the particle density of both fluids equals, hence $n_e = n_i = n$. In the process of deriving useful relations we then do not use the Poisson equation (4.4), which would otherwise lead to a discrepancy, because in details, $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = 0$, which is not true due to the collective behaviour. We will show later that the plasma approximation is valid only when scales larger than Debye shielding length are considered.

4.2 Highly ionised plasmas

The need to capture the particle interactions on scales smaller than the Debye length leads naturally to additional term in the Euler equation. Such term is termed *collisional term*, eventhough strictly speaking it is not the same as the collisional term in the Boltzmann equation we derived earlier. The Euler equation for electrons then reads

$$m_e n_e \frac{d\mathbf{u}_e}{dt} = -en_e(\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u}_e \times \mathbf{B}) - \nabla p_e + P_{ei}. \quad (4.11)$$

(figure here)

Figure 4.1: The geometry to estimate the specific rezistivity

The term P_{ei} represents the momentum change due to the collisions with ions. Due to the momentum conservation law, it is clear that

$$P_{ei} = -P_{ie}. \quad (4.12)$$

Heuristically, the collisional term may be written as

$$P_{ei} = \underbrace{\eta}_{(5)} \underbrace{e^2}_{(1)} \underbrace{n_e}_{(2)} \underbrace{n_i (\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e)}_{(3)} \sim \eta e^2 n^2 (\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e), \quad (4.13)$$

(4)

where we may notice the construction of the expression from the following

- ① The interaction is coulombic, hence proportional to the multiplication of charges of both species.
- ② The rate of collisions is proportional to the electron flux.
- ③ Relative speed of the fluids.
- ④ Describes how often do the electrons meat ions.
- ⑤ The scaling parameter (describing the efficiency of the collisions), it has a physical meaning of the *specific rezistivity*.

Alternatively,

$$P_{ei} = m_e n (\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e) \nu_{ei}, \quad (4.14)$$

where ν_{ei} is the collisional frequency, with which the electrons hit the ions. Such expression may also be viewed phenomenologically: the expression $m_e n (\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e)$ physically means the momentum exchanged due to the collisions, which is “normalised” by the collisional frequency (as the Euler equation evaluates the change of the momentum in time). By comparing the two formulations of P_{ei} we obtain the expression for the collisional frequency as

$$\nu_{ei} = \frac{ne^2}{m_e} \eta = \omega_p^2 \varepsilon_0 \eta, \quad (4.15)$$

where ω_p is a plasma frequency (to be derived in Section 5.4).

Let us estimate the specific rezistivity η from a model of the electron squeezing around the ion and hence losing some of its momentum. See Fig. 4.1. The interaction is driven by the electric force, hence the force is

$$F = -\frac{e^2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0 r^2}, \quad (4.16)$$

where r is the distance between the ion (which is considered fixed in this coordinate system) and the passing electron. We roughly estimate that the interaction takes the total time T , where

$$T = \frac{r_0}{v}, \quad (4.17)$$

where r_0 is the impact parameter and v is the mutual speed of the electron and ion. During the interaction, the electron's momentum changes by

$$\Delta(m_e v) \sim |FT| = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r_0 v}. \quad (4.18)$$

Let us consider that during the interaction, the electron loses all of its momentum, hence $\Delta(m_e v) = m_e v$. This is the case when the electron is scattered to the direction perpendicular to the direction of the original motion.

$$\Delta(m_e v) = m_e v = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 r_0 v}, \quad (4.19)$$

which may be used to express the corresponding value of the impact parameter r_0 . For this special case of the perpendicular scattering, we will denote this special value of the impact parameter as r_{90} :

$$r_{90} = \frac{e^2}{4\pi\epsilon_0 m_e v^2}. \quad (4.20)$$

Let's define the *effective cross-section* σ of the interaction as

$$\sigma = \pi r_{90}^2 = \frac{e^4}{16\pi\epsilon_0^2 m_e^2 v^4}. \quad (4.21)$$

Then the collisional frequency (how many collisions in a unit of time) may be expressed as

$$\nu_{ei} = \sigma n v = \frac{n e^4}{16\pi\epsilon_0^2 m_e^2 v^3}. \quad (4.22)$$

If we further relate the typical speed of the electrons and their temperature by $m_e v_e^2 \sim K_B T_e$, we obtain for the specific resistivity

$$\eta = \frac{\nu_{ei} m_e}{n e^2} = \frac{e^2}{16\pi\epsilon_0^2 m_e v^3} = \frac{e^2 m_e^{1/2}}{16\pi\epsilon_0^2 (K_B T_e)^{3/2}}. \quad (4.23)$$

So far we have considered only the perpendicular scattering. To account for all impact parameters, we must integrate over all of them, $\int_0^\infty 1/r dr$. Unfortunately, such function diverges, and the workaround is to limit the integration by the lower and upper bounds from the physical view. The lower bound is obviously the perpendicular scattering. The upper bound is the Debye length, since on larger scales, the plasma is neutral. Then we have

$$\int_{r_{90}}^{\lambda_D} \frac{1}{r} dr = [\ln r]_{r_{90}}^{\lambda_D} = \ln \frac{\lambda_D}{r_{90}} = \ln \Lambda, \quad (4.24)$$

where Λ is the coulombic logarithm. This brings a correction to what we have previously derived, hence the full expression of the specific resistivity reads

$$\eta = \frac{e^2 m_e^{1/2}}{16\pi\epsilon_0^2 (K_B T_e)^{3/2}} \ln \Lambda. \quad (4.25)$$

Note that

- η does not depend on density. The larger density of the charge carriers is ballanced by the higher rate of collisions.
- $\eta \propto T^{-3/2}$, hence for large temperatures the specific resistivity is very small. As a consequence, if we want to heat the plasma via the Joule heating from the electric current flowing through the plasma, the processes get very inefficient when large temperatures are reached, hence one cannot obtain the temperatures necessary for thermonuclear fussion using such energy pumping. Different mechanism must be used.
- For $K_B T_e \sim 100$ eV the plasma specific resistivity is $5 \times 10^{-7} \Omega\text{m}$, which is of the same order as the resistivity of metals such as copper.

Also note that

$$P_{ei} = \eta e^2 n^2 (\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e) = en_e E, \quad (4.26)$$

when

$$E = \eta en (\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e) = \eta \mathbf{j}, \quad (4.27)$$

which is the Ohm's law.

4.3 Single-fluid model

Even a rougher approximation exists, when we stop considering two charged species in the plasma – a *single-fluid approximation*. The two species are electrons (having the particle mass m) and ions (having mass M). The governing equations of the single-fluid approximation are obtained by linearly combining the equations for double-fluid approximation. These equations are replenished with the collision terms $P_{ei} = \eta e^2 n^2 |\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e|$, where η is a specific resistivity, and an ad-hoc term of the gravity force. We further neglect the convective derivative $(\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}$ by assuming the the speeds of fluids are generally small and hence this is the quadratic term. We further define a the bulk density

$$\rho \equiv n_i M + n_e m \sim n(M + m) \sim nM, \quad (4.28)$$

the bulk velocity

$$\mathbf{u} \equiv \frac{1}{\rho} (n_i M \mathbf{u}_i + n_e m \mathbf{u}_e) \sim \frac{n(M \mathbf{u}_i + m \mathbf{u}_e)}{n(M + m)} = \frac{M \mathbf{u}_i + m \mathbf{u}_e}{M + m}, \quad (4.29)$$

the bulk current density

$$\mathbf{j} \equiv e(n_i \mathbf{u}_i - n_e \mathbf{u}_e) \sim ne(\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e), \quad (4.30)$$

and a bulk pressure

$$p = p_i + p_e. \quad (4.31)$$

Let's consider the sum of Euler equations for both fluids

$$Mn \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_i}{\partial t} = en(\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u}_i \times \mathbf{B}) - \nabla p_i + Mng + P_{ie}, \quad (4.32)$$

$$mn \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_e}{\partial t} = -en(\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u}_e \times \mathbf{B}) - \nabla p_e + mng + P_{ei} \quad (4.33)$$

by using the symmetry $P_{ie} = -P_{ei}$ and definitions above we have

$$n(M+m) \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left(\frac{M\mathbf{u}_i + m\mathbf{u}_e}{M+m} \right) = n \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (M\mathbf{u}_i + m\mathbf{u}_e) = en(\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e) \times \mathbf{B} - \nabla p + n(M+m)\mathbf{g}. \quad (4.34)$$

which is

$$\rho \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} = \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B} - \nabla p + \rho \mathbf{g}, \quad (4.35)$$

which is the equation of motion for single-fluid plasma.

Let's consider a different combination of the same equations. Let's multiply (4.32) by m and (4.33) by M

$$mMn \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_i}{\partial t} = emn(\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u}_i \times \mathbf{B}) - m\nabla p_i + mMng + mP_{ie}, \quad (4.36)$$

$$mMn \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_e}{\partial t} = -eMn(\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u}_e \times \mathbf{B}) - M\nabla p_e + mMng + MP_{ei}. \quad (4.37)$$

Now subtract the two. We have

$$\begin{aligned} nmM \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e) &= en(M+m)\mathbf{E} + en(m\mathbf{u}_i + M\mathbf{u}_e) \times \mathbf{B} - \\ &\quad - m\nabla p_i + M\nabla p_e - (M+m)P_{ei}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.38)$$

Now $\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e$ may be expressed using the bulk electric current and

$$m\mathbf{u}_i + M\mathbf{u}_e = M\mathbf{u}_i + m\mathbf{u}_e + M(\mathbf{u}_e - \mathbf{u}_i) + m(\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e) = \frac{\rho}{n}\mathbf{u} - (M-m)\frac{\mathbf{j}}{ne}. \quad (4.39)$$

and also

$$P_{ei} = \eta e^2 n^2 (\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e) = \eta en \mathbf{j} \quad (4.40)$$

By further dividing (4.38) by $en(M+m) = e\rho$ we have

$$\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B} - \eta \mathbf{j} = \frac{1}{e\rho} \left[\frac{Mmn}{e} \frac{\partial \mathbf{j}}{\partial t n} + (M-m)\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B} + m\nabla p_i - M\nabla p_e \right]. \quad (4.41)$$

For $m/M \rightarrow 0$ and when

$$\frac{Mmn}{e} \frac{\partial \mathbf{j}}{\partial t n} = MnB \frac{m}{eB} \frac{\partial \mathbf{j}}{\partial t n} = MnB\omega_c^{-1} \frac{\partial \mathbf{j}}{\partial t n} \ll (M - m)\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B}, \quad (4.42)$$

which is fulfilled when the time variations of the current density are much slower than the cyclotron frequency, we obtain

$$\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B} - \eta \mathbf{j} = \frac{1}{en} (\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B} - \nabla p_e), \quad (4.43)$$

which is the *generalised Ohm's law*. The first term on the right-hand side is the expression for the Hall's current. In various applications, the right-hand side is often completely neglected.

Similarly (and we leave the derivation to the reader) one may obtain the continuity equation for density and charge density $\rho_e = e(n_i - n_e)$ for single-fluid plasma by summing and subtracting the continuity equations for both fluids:

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \rho \mathbf{u} = 0 \quad (4.44)$$

and

$$\frac{\partial \rho_e}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{j} = 0. \quad (4.45)$$

Hence the full set of equations for a single-fluid plasma reads

$$\rho \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} = \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B} - \nabla p + \rho \mathbf{g}, \quad (4.46)$$

$$\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B} = \eta \mathbf{j}, \quad (4.47)$$

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \rho \mathbf{u} = 0, \quad (4.48)$$

$$\frac{\partial \rho_e}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{j} = 0. \quad (4.49)$$

This system must be accompanied by Maxwell equations to fully describe the plasma in equilibrium, where the definitions for ρ_e and \mathbf{j} are simply used in Equations (4.4)-(4.7). This approximation is used usually when the plasma resistivity shows in the problem and is often used also in astrophysics. The system of single-fluid equations is most often understood under the term *magnetohydrodynamic equations* or *MHD* equations.

4.4 Approximations to plasma fluid

Additional approximations to plasma fluid approximation are used in some cases.

4.4.1 Force-free and ideal MHD

The *force-free approximation* is valid for systems, where locally the plasma does not “feel” the Lorentz force, i.e.

$$f_{\text{Lorentz}} = \rho_e \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B} = 0. \quad (4.50)$$

This approximation is also used in the case when the Lorentz force is negligible compared to other considered forces. Other view to this approximation may also be formulated in such a way that the electromagnetic field induced by the motion of plasma fluid exactly and immediately cancels out the external forces.

The *ideal MHD approximation* is somewhat different. It uses the fact that in the comoving frame the electric field disappears. I.e.

$$\mathbf{E}' = \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{0}. \quad (4.51)$$

By using the generalised Ohm’s law it turns out that the ideal MHD approximation equals to the case when the plasma is ideally conductive, therefore when the resistivity is zero. This may be immediately seen from

$$\mathbf{E}' = \eta \mathbf{j}, \quad (4.52)$$

where the left-hand side is zero because of (4.51) and this relation may be valid in a trivial case when $\mathbf{j} = 0$ or when $\eta = 0$ (which represents an infinite conductivity).

The two approximations mentioned in this subsection are usable in the case when the electromagnetic field is degenerated, i.e. when $\mathbf{E} \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$. The two coincide when $\mathbf{j} = \rho_e \mathbf{u}$.

Frozen field

The consequence of the ideal MHD approximation is something called *frozen field*. It is a description of an observed behaviour of highly-conductive plasmas, where a strong bound between the plasma and the field exists. It was found responsible for strengthening the magnetic field in the stars or temporal changes of the Earth’s magnetosphere under the influence of the varying solar wind.

Let us start from taking the curl of the Ampère’s law:

$$\nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{B}) = \nabla \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} - \Delta \mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \left(\mu_0 \mathbf{j} + \mu_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} \right). \quad (4.53)$$

The term $\nabla \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}$ vanishes due to the Gauss’s law for magnetism. By using the ideal MHD approximation (4.51), Eq. (4.52), and the definition of $\sigma \equiv 1/\eta$ we have

$$\sigma \mu_0 \nabla \times (\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) + \mu_0 \nabla \times \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}}{\partial t} = -\Delta \mathbf{B}. \quad (4.54)$$

For $\sigma \rightarrow \infty$ must $\nabla \times (\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) = 0$ in order to $\Delta \mathbf{B}$ be finite. By additionally using the Faraday’s law we then have

$$-\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} + \nabla \times (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) = 0 \quad \rightarrow \quad \nabla \times (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) = \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t}. \quad (4.55)$$

Drawing to a frozen field approximation

Figure 4.2: caption

And important note here. Stating that $\nabla \times (\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) = 0$ does not automatically mean that $\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B} = 0$. A mathematical object being zero does not necessary have to have vanishing derivatives!

The frozen-field approximation may also be understood as a condition, when the magnetic flux through a closed curve bound to the plasma does not change with time. Let us prove this statement. Let's start from defining the system as in Fig. 4.2. By zooming in it is obvious that the change of the surface vector element is given by a cross-product of the plasma velocity and the elementary length along the closed curve, i.e., $\frac{d}{dt} \mathbf{S} = \mathbf{u} \times d\mathbf{l}$.

We will now derive the change of the magnetic flux Ψ with time:

$$\frac{d\Psi}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} \int \mathbf{B} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = \int \mathbf{B} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{S}}{dt} + \int \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} \cdot d\mathbf{S}. \quad (4.56)$$

We apply the relation between the surface and length elements from above and after using the cyclic exchange in a mixed product we have

$$\oint_l \mathbf{B} \cdot (\mathbf{u} \times d\mathbf{l}) + \int \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} \cdot \mathbf{S} = - \oint_l (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot d\mathbf{l} + \int \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} \cdot \mathbf{S}. \quad (4.57)$$

We further use the Stokes mathematical theorem and obtain

$$- \int \nabla \times (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \mathbf{S} + \int \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = \int \left[\nabla \times (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) - \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} \right] \cdot d\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{0}, \quad (4.58)$$

where we used (4.55). Q.E.D.

4.4.2 Axisymmetrical systems, stream functions

Another class of approximations comes with the symmetries and/or degenerations of the system. Let us consider the axially symmetric stationary system represented in the cylindrical coordinates (R, φ, z) . I.e. $\frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi} = 0$ and $\frac{\partial}{\partial t} = 0$. The curl of \mathbf{E} that has components

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = \left(\frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial E_z}{\partial \varphi} - \frac{\partial E_R}{\partial z}, \frac{\partial E_R}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial E_z}{\partial R}, \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial}{\partial R} R E_\varphi - \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial E_R}{\partial \varphi} \right) = \mathbf{0}. \quad (4.59)$$

From the third component it turns out that $E_\varphi = 0$.

By using the ideal MHD approximation we further have

$$E_\varphi = -(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B})_\varphi = -u_R B_z + u_z B_R = 0, \quad (4.60)$$

and therefore

$$\frac{u_R}{u_z} = \frac{B_R}{B_z}. \quad (4.61)$$

Thus the poloidal components are bound with an unknown scalar function ξ

$$\mathbf{u}_p = \xi(R, z)\mathbf{B}_p, \quad (4.62)$$

which is a consequence of the axial symmetry, stationarity, and the used ideal MHD approximation. Such result is therefore not valid generally!

Let us only remind that the poloidal component of a vector \vec{a} is simply a combination of the radial and height components, i.e., $\mathbf{a}_p = a_R\mathbf{e}_R + a_z\mathbf{e}_z$.

Because $\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}$, where \mathbf{A} is a magnetic vector-potential, we may write

$$\Psi(R, z) = RA_\varphi, \quad (4.63)$$

where Ψ is a scalar magnetic flux function. Then simply

$$B_R = -\frac{1}{R}\frac{\partial\Psi}{\partial z} \quad \text{and} \quad B_z = \frac{1}{R}\frac{\partial\Psi}{\partial R}. \quad (4.64)$$

By using the continuity equation

$$\frac{\partial\rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho\mathbf{u}_p) + \frac{\partial\rho v_\varphi}{\partial\varphi} = \nabla \cdot (\rho\mathbf{u}_p) = 0 \quad (4.65)$$

we have

$$\nabla \cdot (\rho\mathbf{u}_p) = \nabla \cdot (\rho\xi\mathbf{B}_p) = \nabla\rho\xi \cdot \mathbf{B}_p + \rho\xi\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}_p = 0. \quad (4.66)$$

The last term vanishes due to the Gauss's law for magnetism. By decomposing the divergence operator into the non-vanishing components and using (4.64)

$$\nabla \cdot (\rho\xi\mathbf{B}_p) = \nabla_R(\rho\xi)B_R + \nabla_z(\rho\xi)B_z = -\frac{1}{R}\nabla_R(\rho\xi)\nabla_z\Psi + \frac{1}{R}\nabla_z(\rho\xi)\nabla_R\Psi = 0 \quad (4.67)$$

we see that this is the φ component of an expression $\frac{1}{R}\nabla(\rho\xi) \times \nabla\Psi$. Due to the assumptions the arguments of the gradient operators do not depend on φ . The gradient therefore has only the component perpendicular to both \mathbf{e}_R and \mathbf{e}_z non-trivial. That is the φ -component, which also vanished as we proved in (4.67). Thus

$$\nabla(\rho\xi) \times \nabla\Psi = \mathbf{0}. \quad (4.68)$$

It may be interpreted as $\nabla(\rho\xi) \parallel \nabla\Psi$ and therefore the scalar function ξ may be related to Ψ as

$$4\pi\rho\xi = F_1(\Psi). \quad (4.69)$$

Function F_1 is termed the *stream function*, which is obviously constant on a constant surface of Ψ . Its particular mathematical expression may be determined from the boundary conditions. The use of the streamfunction is the reduction of variables to be solved for the given system as it introduces a bound between \mathbf{u} and \mathbf{B} .

Similarly, using the poloidal and azimuthal (toroidal) decomposition and Equations (4.62) and (4.64) we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B} &= u_\varphi \mathbf{e}_\varphi \times \mathbf{B}_p + \mathbf{u}_p \times B_\varphi \mathbf{e}_\varphi = u_\varphi \mathbf{e}_\varphi \times \mathbf{B}_p + \xi \mathbf{B}_p \times B_\varphi \mathbf{e}_\varphi \\ &= (u_\varphi - \xi B_\varphi)(B_z - B_R) \mathbf{e}_z = (u_\varphi - \xi B_\varphi) \frac{1}{R} \left(\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial R} - \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial z} \right) \mathbf{e}_z \\ &= \frac{u_\varphi - \xi B_\varphi}{R} \nabla \Psi.\end{aligned}\tag{4.70}$$

In a stationary frozen-field approximation we have

$$\nabla \times (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) = \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = \mathbf{0},\tag{4.71}$$

and therefore

$$\nabla \times \left(\frac{u_\varphi - \xi B_\varphi}{R} \nabla \Psi \right) = \nabla \left(\frac{u_\varphi - \xi B_\varphi}{R} \right) \times \nabla \Psi = \mathbf{0},\tag{4.72}$$

where we proceeded similarly to the previous case. Again, the surfaces of the arguments of the gradient operators must align, and hence we may define a second stream function as

$$\frac{u_\varphi - \xi B_\varphi}{R} = F_2(\Psi).\tag{4.73}$$

By taking the projection of the Euler equation to \mathbf{e}_φ we can show that

$$B_\varphi \mathbf{e}_\varphi \cdot \nabla (RB_\varphi - F_1 R v_\varphi) = 0,\tag{4.74}$$

and hence define the third streamfunction as

$$RB_\varphi - F_1(\Psi) R v_\varphi = F_3(\Psi).\tag{4.75}$$

And finally by taking the projection of the Euler equation onto \mathbf{B}_p we obtain a definition for a fourth streamfunction as

$$\frac{1}{2} u^2 + \int_{\Psi=\text{const}} \frac{dP}{\rho} + \Phi - R u_\varphi F_3(\Psi) = F_4(\Psi).\tag{4.76}$$

Alltogether the streamfunctions provide a “technology” for seeking the solution of the system in a given geometry.

4.5 Drifts in the plasma fluid

Let’s discuss the drifts in the plasma fluid.

4.5.1 Drifts perpendicular to \mathbf{B}

When investigating the drifts in the direction perpendicular to \mathbf{B} , we solve the perpendicular component of the Euler equation, which for collision-less plasma reads:

$$mn \left(\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u} \right) = qn(\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) - \nabla p \quad (4.77)$$

Let us consider systems, where the left-hand side is negligible to the right-hand side.¹ Hence we solve a much simpler equation

$$0 = qn(\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) - \nabla p \quad (4.78)$$

by applying the vector multiplication by \mathbf{B} :

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= qn[\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B} + (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) \times \mathbf{B}] - \nabla p \times \mathbf{B} = \\ &= qn(\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{u}B^2 + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{B}) - \nabla p \times \mathbf{B}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.79)$$

The perpendicular component of this equation is

$$qn(\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{u}_\perp B^2) - \nabla p \times \mathbf{B} = 0 \quad (4.80)$$

and thus

$$\mathbf{u}_\perp = \frac{\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}}{B^2} - \frac{\nabla p \times \mathbf{B}}{qnB^2} \quad (4.81)$$

We found the expression for the perpendicular drift in the plasma fluid. The first term resembles the already known E-B drift, the second term is new and represents the *diamagnetic drift*

4.5.2 Drifts parallel to \mathbf{B}

Now let's look at the remaining component of the drifts in a plasma fluid. Let's consider the coordinate system so that the axis \mathbf{e}_z is parallel to the magnetic field. Then we study the z -component of the equation of motion

$$mn \left(\frac{\partial u_z}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla) u_z \right) = qnE_z - \frac{\partial p}{\partial z} \quad (4.82)$$

with equation of state in a form

$$\frac{\nabla p}{p} = \gamma \frac{\nabla n}{n}, \quad (4.83)$$

¹To estimate this, let's use the Fourier transform of Euler equation, for now blindly applying the rules (5.11) to (5.13). By simply waving the hands we see that the left-hand side is proportional to $i\omega + i\frac{1}{L}$, where ω is a mode frequency and L is a characteristic scale of spatial change, while the right-hand side is proportional to $i\omega_c \propto \frac{1}{r_L}$. Usually, $\omega \ll \omega_c$ and $r_L \ll L$, hence the left-hand side is negligible.

where we further use $\gamma = 1$, because we will solve the equation only for electrons that are fast and may be considered isothermic. Additional assumptions apply: $(\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla)u_z \rightarrow 0$, u_z homogeneous, and $\nabla p = K_B T \nabla n$. Then

$$mn \frac{\partial u_z}{\partial t} = qnE_z - K_B T \frac{\partial n}{\partial z} \quad (4.84)$$

For electrons we have $q = -e$, $m \rightarrow 0$. By using the Poisson equation $E_z = -\partial\phi/\partial z$ we have

$$e \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial z} = \frac{K_B T}{n} \frac{\partial n}{\partial z} \quad (4.85)$$

and hence

$$e\phi = K_B T \ln n + \mathcal{C} \quad (4.86)$$

and finally

$$n = n_0 \exp \left[\frac{e\phi}{K_B T} \right], \quad (4.87)$$

which is the *Boltzmann relation*. The Boltzmann relation describes the spatial distribution of electrons around the random concentration of ions. In the local concentration of ions, the pressure gradient pushes electrons away from this region. The consecutive charge separation gives rise to the local electric field, which acts against the pressure gradient. In the equilibrium, both the pressure and electrostatic forces are ballanced. The Boltzmann relation is a very useful relation when we further solve the system of equations for ions. Due to the mass difference between the two species the spatial distribution of electrons may be approximated by the Boltzmann relation.

Chapter 5

Waves in plasmas

5.1 Linear waves

It is not trivial to comprehensively describe solutions supporting waves in plasmas. We will investigate a few examples only of *linear waves*. In practice, we will decompose the variables describing both plasma and magnetic and electric fields into two components: a *background component* (having index 0) and a *fluctuating component* (having index 1), e.g., $\rho = \rho_0 + \rho_1$. In (silently) applying this decomposition, we will assume that:

1. The background components automatically fulfil the full set of magnetohydrodynamic equations. The background is the zeroth order of smallness variable.
2. The fluctuating components are small compared to the background (e.g., $\rho_1/\rho_0 \ll 1$). When averaging the fluctuating component (both in space and/or time), the averaged value is zero (e.g., $\langle \rho_1 \rangle = 0$). Implicitly, we assume the same about both temporal and spatial derivatives of the fluctuating component. The fluctuating part is the first order of smallness variable.

We will solve the set (or subset) of magnetohydrodynamic equations to the first order.

Let's stop for a while and make this decomposition crystal clear for ever. It might get confusing especially in the case of velocity. When we computed moments of Boltzmann equation, we performed also a decomposition having a fluctuating part. Let's compare the two:

$$\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}, \tag{5.1}$$

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}_0 + \mathbf{u}_1. \tag{5.2}$$

These two are crucially different. While in Eq. (5.1) a *particle* velocity \mathbf{v} is decomposed into a *mean* (or bulk) velocity \mathbf{u} and the component \mathbf{w} fluctuating about this mean value, where the amplitude of the fluctuations may be (and typically is) much larger than the amplitude of the bulk motion, in Eq. (5.2) the *bulk* velocity \mathbf{u} is decomposed into the background fulfilling the MHD equations \mathbf{u}_0 and a small correction to this background value. Hence \mathbf{u} from Eq. (5.2) indeed equals to \mathbf{u} from Eq. (5.1).

5.2 Example: Acoustic waves in fluids

To illustrate the linearisation approach, let us derive the dispersion relation for waves in a fluid, fully described by the Euler equation in the form

$$\rho \left[\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u} \right] = -\nabla p = -\frac{\gamma p}{\rho} \nabla \rho, \quad (5.3)$$

where on the right-hand side we assumed the adiabatic equation of state $p\rho^{-\gamma} = \text{const}$, and a continuity equation

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{u}) = 0. \quad (5.4)$$

We will assume the following:

Pressure waves in fluids

- Strictly hydrodynamical case (no fields)
- No viscosity
- No bulk motion of the background, $\mathbf{u}_0 = 0$
- The background is homogeneous

By introducing the fluctuating part to the velocity and density, i.e., $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}_0 + \mathbf{u}_1$, $p = p_0 + p_1$, and $\rho = \rho_0 + \rho_1$ Equations (5.3) and (5.4) take the form of

$$(\rho_0 + \rho_1) \left\{ \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_0}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_1}{\partial t} + [(\mathbf{u}_0 + \mathbf{u}_1) \cdot \nabla] (\mathbf{u}_0 + \mathbf{u}_1) \right\} = -\frac{\gamma(p_0 + p_1)}{(\rho_0 + \rho_1)} \nabla(\rho_0 + \rho_1) \quad (5.5)$$

$$\frac{\partial(\rho_0 + \rho_1)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [(\rho_0 + \rho_1)(\mathbf{u}_0 + \mathbf{u}_1)] = 0. \quad (5.6)$$

Now, let's take the continuity equation as an example. It can be explicitly written as

$$\frac{\textcircled{1}}{\partial t} \rho_0 + \frac{\textcircled{2}}{\partial t} \rho_1 + \nabla \cdot (\textcircled{3} \rho_0 \mathbf{u}_0) + \rho_0 \nabla \cdot \textcircled{4} \mathbf{u}_1 + \mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \nabla \textcircled{5} \rho_0 + \nabla \cdot (\textcircled{6} \rho_1 \mathbf{u}_0) + \nabla \cdot (\textcircled{7} \rho_1 \mathbf{u}_1) = 0. \quad (5.7)$$

Let's discuss the terms in the above equation:

- Terms $\textcircled{1}$ and $\textcircled{3}$ automatically fulfill the continuity equation for the background variables: $\frac{\partial \rho_0}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho_0 \mathbf{u}_0) = 0$.
- Term $\textcircled{5}$ is zero because we assumed homogeneous background, i.e. $\nabla \rho_0 = 0$.
- Term $\textcircled{6}$ is zero because we assumed $\mathbf{u}_0 = 0$.

- Term ⑦ is a second order term, thus can be neglected.

Thus only relation

$$\frac{\partial \rho_1}{\partial t} + \rho_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_1 = 0 \quad (5.8)$$

remains. This is the *linearised continuity equation*.

Similarly¹, we obtain the *linearised Euler equation*:

$$\rho_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_1}{\partial t} = -\gamma \frac{p_0}{\rho_0} \nabla \rho_1. \quad (5.9)$$

Equations (5.8) and (5.9) need to be solved. We are looking for solution supporting waves, thus we may search for a solution in a form

$$A = \tilde{A} \exp [i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)], \quad (5.10)$$

where \mathbf{k} is a wave vector in the Fourier space and ω is a frequency. There are two possibilities how to see this approach:

1. We solve these equations in the Fourier space. At this step, a careful reader should open the mathematical textbook and repeat all the assumptions of the Fourier transform.
2. We view the solution as a superposition of modes, each mode² is described by a unique combination of \mathbf{k} and ω . Thus we solve the equations for one general mode and a complete solution is a superposition of all modes with various amplitudes.

Either way, the beauty of the formulation of the equations in the Fourier space is that the differential operators turn into the multiplication. One can easily prove from Eq. (5.10) that

$$\frac{\partial \bullet}{\partial t} \rightarrow -i\omega \bullet \quad (5.11)$$

$$\nabla \bullet \rightarrow i\mathbf{k} \bullet \quad (5.12)$$

$$\Delta \bullet \rightarrow -k^2 \bullet \quad (5.13)$$

Our goal is to find a *dispersion relation*, thus a relation which couples \mathbf{k} and ω . Dispersion relation $D(\mathbf{k}, \omega) = 0$ fully describes the given mode of the wave. Equations (5.8) and (5.9) written in the Fourier space take the following form:

$$-i\omega \rho_1 + i\rho_0 \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1 = 0, \quad (5.14)$$

$$-i\omega \rho_0 \mathbf{u}_1 + i\gamma \frac{p_0}{\rho_0} \mathbf{k} \rho_1 = 0. \quad (5.15)$$

¹For clarity, let's handle the fraction on the right-hand side explicitly:

$$\frac{p_0 + p_1}{\rho_0 + \rho_1} = \frac{\frac{p_0 + p_1}{\rho_0}}{\frac{\rho_0 + \rho_1}{\rho_0}} = \frac{\frac{p_0}{\rho_0} + \frac{p_1}{\rho_0}}{1 + \frac{\rho_1}{\rho_0}} = \frac{p_0}{\rho_0},$$

because $\frac{p_1}{\rho_0}$ and $\frac{\rho_1}{\rho_0}$ are negligible terms.

²A *mode* is defined either as any of the wave-like and/or oscillation-like plasma motions, or as one possible configuration of the travelling or steady wave. Both definitions are equivalent.

For simplicity let's define the coordinate system so that the wave propagates in the main direction, thus wave vector \mathbf{k} may be replaced by its scalar equivalent wave number k . Then by solving the equations above one obtains a *dispersion relation*

$$\frac{\omega}{k} = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma p_0}{\rho_0}} \equiv c_s, \quad (5.16)$$

where c_s is a speed of sound.

A few remarks to what we just obtained:

- The dispersion relation exists, thus the waves propagate. The propagation is fully described by the wave vector \mathbf{k} . Possible combinations of the wave vector and frequency of the mode are bound by the dispersion relation. The waves propagate in a form of pressure fluctuations.
- The wave number of the wave is inversely proportional to its *wavelength* $\lambda = (2\pi)/k$.
- The *phase speed* v_φ is a speed with which places with the same phase propagate through the medium. The phase speed is given by $v_\varphi = \omega/k$. In our case, $v_\varphi = c_s$.
- On the other hand, the *group speed* v_g is a speed with which the modulation information propagates. It also relates the wave number and the frequency of the mode by $v_g = d\omega/dk$. In our case, again, $v_g = c_s$ and $v_g = v_\varphi$. As we will show later, this does not have to always be the case. It can be illustrated on a very simple example: we have one mode only with a constant amplitude in time. A constant “beep” does not carry any information. Its dispersion relation reads: $\omega = \text{const}$. Thus its phase speed is not defined (it might be viewed as infinite as well), but the group speed is zero. We just showed an additional important property: phase speed does not have to be limited (again, it does not carry any information), while the group speed is limited (from the top) by the speed of light c .
- The term *dispersion relation* indicates that the wave *disperses*, changes the wave form during the propagation. That indeed is the case, when the wave is *dispersive*, i.e., when the propagation phase speed depends on wave frequency or wave number. Then the amplitude spectrum of the wave packet changes as the packet passes through the medium – individual frequencies exhibit various phase shifts. Then the wave-packet propagation is not a simple translation parallel with the direction of propagation, but is more complex and additionally to the movement of the wave packet the packet itself changes its shape. Dispersive waves usually have group speed different from the phase speed. Sound waves in fluids are non-dispersive.
- Note that the approach we will use is equivalent to *approximation by the geometrical optics* a.k.a. *ray approximation*, which ignores the effects of the finite

wavelength. Such approach is justified when the wavelength is much shorter than the typical spatial scale of the changes in the medium. In the other case, effect may be observed, which are not captured by the ray approximation. Finite wavelength effect are captured by the *scattering theory*, which are not easy to be solved both analytically and numerically. Approximations to the scattering theory, such as the Born approximation, capture some of the most important finite wavelength effects quite well.

Let us see what happens when we relax an assumption of $\mathbf{u}_0 = 0$. Then the Fourier image of the continuity equation will read:

$$-i\omega\rho_1 + i\rho_1\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_0 + i\rho_0\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1 = 0, \quad (5.17)$$

which may be written as

$$-i\rho_1(\omega - \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_0) + i\rho_0\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1 = 0. \quad (5.18)$$

Hence by introducing $\omega' = \omega - \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_0$ we change the equation to the previous case. Similar operation may be done to the Euler equation³. Hence the final dispersion relation will be

$$\omega - \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_0 = kc_s, \quad (5.21)$$

and the motion of the background fluid with respect to the observer's frame introduces a *Doppler shift* of the frequencies.

5.3 Types of plasma waves

To study the waves in plasma, we will use the fluid approximation. It is fine enough to capture all essential properties to investigate the possible propagation of waves, but is also simple enough to be able to obtain some analytical solutions. There is the whole spectrum of waves propagating through plasma, which may be decomposed into several modes with different dispersion relations. We will study only a handful of the possible modes, some of which may have important physical consequences.

Plasma waves are usually excited by means of instabilities (this is not surprising, e.g. sound waves propagating through a convective envelope of Sun-like stars are excited by the convective instability below the photosphere of the star) or they may be excited artificially. The dispersion relation does not say anything about the excitation process. Basic types of plasma waves can be distinguished by given one of the two values to the following three properties:

³Due to $\mathbf{u}_0 \neq 0$ we must keep the "convective derivative" term in the equation, leading to the linearised form

$$\rho_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_1}{\partial t} + \rho_0(\mathbf{u}_0 \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}_1 = -\gamma \frac{p_0}{\rho_0} \nabla \rho_1, \quad (5.19)$$

which has a Fourier form of

$$-i\rho_0(\omega - \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_0)\mathbf{u}_1 + ik\gamma \frac{p_0}{\rho_0} \rho_1, \quad (5.20)$$

where a possible substitution $\omega' = \omega - \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_0$ is immediately visible.

1. In the wave, either electrons or ions oscillate. Thus we have *electron* or *ion* wave. Usually, when we solve for an electron wave, the ions are approximated as a non-movable background, because ions are at least four order heavier than electrons.
2. The wave can be *longitudinal* or *electrostatic* when $\mathbf{k} \parallel \mathbf{E}_1$ or *transversal* or *electromagnetic*, when $\mathbf{k} \perp \mathbf{E}_1$, where \mathbf{E}_1 is a fluctuating component of the electric field.
3. The wave is *parallel* when $\mathbf{k} \parallel \mathbf{B}_0$ or *perpendicular* when $\mathbf{k} \perp \mathbf{B}_0$, where \mathbf{B}_0 is a background magnetic field.

Plasma waves we will discuss in the following Sections will always be distinguishable by the three above described tags.

The approach we will take is that we will prescribe expected geometry of the wave (in terms of the type, direction of propagation and which of the components it contains) and search for the solution using the linearised fluid and Maxwell equations. If the solution in a form of a dispersion relation exists, the plasma supports this kind of wave. Our solutions will not give the answer if this particular wave really gets excited under given conditions and what is its amplitude (for this one would need to state the initial or boundary conditions), not even saying anything about whether this particular mode is dominant or completely marginal at given conditions.

The linearisation approach explicitly states that we introduce some plasma background, which fulfills the fluid equations and remains unchanged by the wave propagation. It is the perturbations in density, velocity, pressure, electric or magnetic field, which oscillates and possibly propagates from place to place as a wave. We will see that the type of the propagating wave usually depends on the direction with respect to the background magnetic field.

Let's make a simplified example, which we will in details investigate in Section 5.8.3. Let us consider a stationary and homogeneous plasma cloud in an background magnetic field. Somewhere inside this cloud we shortly flick with a light-source, a bulb if you want. In normal transparent neutral gas such impuls would cause the spherical light-wave to propagate from the point of initiation with a speed of light in all directions. In plasma it is more difficult, as the light wave are known to be variations of the electric and magnetic field. In plasma these small electric and magnetic field oscillating with the wave interact with the charges particles by displacing them slightly, which causes the modification of the electric and magnetic field in the wave. The motion of particles and the electric and magnetic fields are bound via the set of (linearised) fluid equations, which in general depends on the direction to the background magnetic field. Hence the waveform gets modified depending on the angle of the propagation with respect to the background magnetic field. We will see that along the magnetic field two circularly polarised modes propagating with different speeds appear, accompanied with incoherent local oscillations of plasma. In the direction perpendicular to the magnetic field two linearly polarised modes, again with different propagation speeds, appear. In a general direction of propagation we will find a combination of all five modes. Electromagnetic waves do not cause the variations in plasma density, hence only the electric and magnetic

fields are affected, and inheritedly also the motions of individual particles. Another kind of impuls, such as a sudden local increase of plasma density, will excite other type of waves, but not the complex of electromagnetic ones, only if such impuls is not accompanied with some emission mechanism.

5.4 Plasma oscillations

The very basic oscillatory movement registered in plasmas takes a form of *plasma oscillations*. Let's derive the dispersion relation first. We search for a solution under the following assumptions:

Plasma oscillations

- No background fields, i.e., $\mathbf{E}_0 = \mathbf{B}_0 = 0$, we do not consider induced perturbation to the magnetic field, i.e., $\mathbf{B}_1 = 0$. Thus from the set of Maxwell equations only the Poisson equation must be retained
- No thermal motion, plasma is cold
- Ions are fixed in space and have a uniform distribution
- Background density of ions and electrons is the same, i.e., $n_{e0} = n_{i0} = n_0$
- Background is stationary and homogeneous, $\mathbf{u}_{e0} = 0$

Thus we solve the following set of linearised equations:

$$mn_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_{e1}}{\partial t} = -en_0 \mathbf{E}_1, \quad (5.22)$$

$$\frac{\partial n_{e1}}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [n_0 \mathbf{u}_{e1}] = 0, \quad (5.23)$$

$$\mathbf{E}_1 = -\nabla \phi_1, \quad (5.24)$$

$$\varepsilon_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E}_1 = -en_{e1}. \quad (5.25)$$

Now we express \mathbf{E}_1 from (5.24) and insert it into appropriate terms in (5.22) and (5.25), and apply a divergence operator to (5.22) to obtain:

$$\varepsilon_0 \Delta \phi_1 = n_{e1} e, \quad (5.26)$$

$$mn_0 \frac{\partial \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{e1}}{\partial t} = en_0 \Delta \phi_1, \quad (5.27)$$

$$\frac{\partial n_{e1}}{\partial t} + n_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{e1} = 0. \quad (5.28)$$

Now we express term $\Delta\phi_1$ from (5.26) and insert it into (5.27). We do a simple algebraic adjustment to (5.28) by leaving only $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{e1}$ on the left-hand side of equation:

$$mn_0 \frac{\partial \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{e1}}{\partial t} = \frac{e^2 n_0}{\varepsilon_0} n_{e1}, \quad (5.29)$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{e1} = -\frac{1}{n_0} \frac{\partial n_{e1}}{\partial t}. \quad (5.30)$$

By combining these two equations we finally obtain

$$-m \frac{\partial^2 n_{e1}}{\partial t^2} = \frac{e^2 n_0}{\varepsilon_0} n_{e1}. \quad (5.31)$$

Now we take the Fourier transform of this equation, practically by applying rules (5.11) and (5.12):

$$\omega^2 n_{e1} = \frac{e^2 n_0}{\varepsilon_0 m} n_{e1}. \quad (5.32)$$

Thus we obtained a *dispersion relation for plasma oscillations*

$$\omega_p^2 = \frac{n_0 e^2}{\varepsilon_0 m}. \quad (5.33)$$

This result requires a little discussion

- The dispersion relation shows that there exist oscillations with this characteristic *plasma frequency* ω_p , but there is no wave propagating, since there is no wave vector \mathbf{k} in the dispersion relation. The physical interpretation is the following: electrons may be displaced from their equilibrium positions determined by stationary background ions by some random fluctuation. The induced electric field acts as a restoring force to return them back to their original positions. As they move back, they have some inertia and overshoot their equilibrium positions. They are displaced again and the electric field again acts as a restoring force. This random movement is periodic. The motion of individual electrons is independent, their mutual phase shifts are random.
- The phase speed of this motion, $v_\varphi = \omega/k$, is not defined. This is not surprising in the frame what we just said. Since the mutual phase shifts of individual electrons are random, a formal phase speed takes *any* value.
- The group speed, $v_g = d\omega/dk = 0$. No signal propagates.
- The plasma frequency is essentially the function of the background density only.
- Debye length relates to plasma frequency as $\lambda_D^2 = \frac{\varepsilon_0 K_B T_e}{n_0 e^2} = \frac{K_B T_e}{m} \frac{1}{\omega_p^2} \sim \frac{1}{2} v_T^2 \frac{1}{\omega_p^2}$, where we approximated the thermal speed $v_T \sim \sqrt{\frac{2K_B T_e}{m}}$. Obviously, the fluctuations induced by plasma oscillations are shielded on the length scales comparable to the Debye length, thus plasma oscillations do not induce any macroscopic charge.

5.5 Electron plasma wave

In the previous section we showed that plasma supports oscillatory motion, however we did not derive the dispersion relation of the wave. We need to keep additional physical effect. Thermal motion may cause the oscillations to propagate.

Longitudinal electron wave

- No background fields, i.e., $\mathbf{E}_0 = \mathbf{B}_0 = 0$, we do not consider induced perturbation to the magnetic field, i.e., $\mathbf{B}_1 = 0$. Thus from the set of Maxwell equations only the Poisson equation must be retained
- Ions are cold, electron are subjects of thermal motion
- Ions are fixed in space and have a uniform distribution
- Background density of ions and electrons is the same, i.e., $n_{e0} = n_{i0} = n_0$
- Background is stationary and homogeneous, $\mathbf{u}_{e0} = 0$

To include the effect of the thermal motion, we need to keep the pressure term in the equation of motion. The gradient of pressure is coupled with the thermal motion through the equation of state

$$\nabla p_e = \nabla(3K_B T_e n_e) = 3K_B T_e \nabla(n_0 + n_{e1}), \quad (5.34)$$

where number 3 indicates that there is only one degree of freedom, thus we (silently) assume the propagation in one direction only. The modified system of linearised equations to be solved then reads:

$$mn_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_{e1}}{\partial t} = -en_0 \mathbf{E}_1 - 3K_B T_e \nabla n_{e1}, \quad (5.35)$$

$$\frac{\partial n_{e1}}{\partial t} + n_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{e1} = 0, \quad (5.36)$$

$$\mathbf{E}_1 = -\nabla \phi_1, \quad (5.37)$$

$$\varepsilon_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E}_1 = -en_{e1}. \quad (5.38)$$

The sequence of algebraic steps performed is identical to those in Section 5.4, thus we state only the final step here

$$-m \frac{\partial^2 n_{e1}}{\partial t^2} = \frac{e^2 n_0}{\varepsilon_0} n_{e1} - 3K_B T_e \Delta n_{e1}. \quad (5.39)$$

By taking the Fourier transform we obtain

$$\omega^2 n_{e1} - \omega_p^2 n_{e1} - 3k^2 \frac{K_B T_e}{m} n_{e1} = 0 \quad (5.40)$$

and finally a dispersion relation for longitudinal electron waves in plasmas

$$\omega^2 = \omega_p^2 + \frac{3}{2}k^2v_T^2, \quad (5.41)$$

where $v_T = \sqrt{\frac{2K_B T_e}{m}}$ is the thermal speed of electrons.

The dispersion relation is only slightly different from the dispersion relation for electron oscillations, however, it has important consequences:

- This relation describes a propagating wave (it contains wave vector \mathbf{k}). It propagates only for frequencies larger than the plasma frequency, for frequencies smaller, the resulting wave vector takes imaginary values, thus the spatial part causes the exponential in (5.10) to decay. Excited waves with frequencies smaller than plasma frequency are rapidly attenuated. The wave propagates only in plasmas, the dispersion relation degenerates to $\omega = 0$ in vacuum.
- The phase speed is given by $v_\varphi = \frac{\sqrt{\omega_p^2 + 3/2k^2v_T^2}}{k}$. It depends on the wave number, thus the waves are dispersive (different modes travel with a different phase speed).
- The group speed $v_g = \frac{3}{2} \frac{v_T^2 k}{\omega} = \frac{3}{2} \frac{v_T^2 k}{\sqrt{\omega_p^2 + 3/2k^2v_T^2}}$ is not zero, thus the waves are able to carry information. Asymptotically for large k , $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} v_g = \frac{3}{2} \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{v_T^2 k}{\sqrt{\omega_p^2 + 3/2k^2v_T^2}} \sim \frac{3}{2} \frac{v_T^2 k}{\sqrt{3/2k^2v_T^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{3}{2}}v_T$, the waves propagate essentially with the thermal speed.

We solved the dispersion relation for perturbation in density of electrons n_{e1} . The definition of the Fourier transform (5.10) allows to introduce a phase shift, so that the variable fulfill the system of equations. Let's assume that the full solution for n_{e1} has a form of

$$n_{e1} = \overline{n_{e1}} \cos(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t) \quad (5.42)$$

and we allow for a phase shift δ_E for \mathbf{E}_1 :

$$\mathbf{E}_1 = \overline{\mathbf{E}_1} \cos(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t + \delta_E). \quad (5.43)$$

Both variables \mathbf{E}_1 and n_{e1} are coupled via Poisson equation $\varepsilon_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E}_1 = -en_{e1}$. Thus

$$-\varepsilon_0 \mathbf{k} \cdot \overline{\mathbf{E}_1} \sin(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t + \delta_E) = -e\overline{n_{e1}} \cos(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t). \quad (5.44)$$

By expressing the left-hand side we obtain

$$\sin(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t) \cos \delta_E + \cos(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t) \sin \delta_E = \frac{e}{\varepsilon_0} \frac{\overline{n_{e1}}}{\overline{\mathbf{E}_1}} \cos(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t). \quad (5.45)$$

This equation has a solution when we take for example $\delta_E = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

The perturbation to electron density and the electric field induced by the wave are shifted in phase by quarter of period. How about the direction of the vector variables?

The Fourier image of the Lorentz force is

$$-\omega \mathbf{u}_{e1} = e(\mathbf{E}_1 + \mathbf{u}_{e1} \times \mathbf{B}_0). \quad (5.46)$$

Since in our case $\mathbf{B}_0 = 0$, the relation simplifies to

$$\mathbf{u}_{e1} = -\frac{e}{\omega} \mathbf{E}_1, \quad (5.47)$$

thus $\mathbf{u}_{e1} \parallel \mathbf{E}_1$. Similarly Faraday's law written in the Fourier space is

$$\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{E}_1 = \omega \mathbf{B}_1, \quad (5.48)$$

but $\mathbf{B}_1 = 0$, hence $\mathbf{k} \parallel \mathbf{E}_1$. The waves are longitudinal.

Relation $\mathbf{B}_1 = 0$ was among the assumptions, however it is not clear that the assumptions are fulfilled. A correct way is to verify the assumptions to make sure that the derivation we just did is selfconsistent. To prove that $\mathbf{B}_1 = 0$ we take a curl of the linearised Ohm's law

$$\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{E}_1 + \mathbf{k} \times (\mathbf{u}_{e1} \times \mathbf{B}_0) = \eta \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{j}_{e1}. \quad (5.49)$$

The current \mathbf{j}_{e1} is caused by fluctuating electrons, hence proportional to electron velocity \mathbf{u}_{e1} . However, \mathbf{u}_{e1} is parallel to the direction of propagation \mathbf{k} , thus the right-hand side of the equation is identically zero. The second term on the left-hand side also vanishes, since $\mathbf{B}_0 = 0$. By expressing $\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{E}_1$ from the Faraday's law we obtain

$$0 = \omega \mathbf{B}_1. \quad (5.50)$$

which has the only solution when $\mathbf{B}_1 = 0$, Q.E.D.

5.6 Ion waves

When it comes to ion waves, the situation becomes more complicated, since we can't consider ions an immovable background anymore. In section 5.2 we derived the dispersion relation for the acoustic waves in the non-magnetised neutral fluid. Will the solution change, when the fluid is composed from charged particles? We search for the wave, assuming:

Ion acoustic wave

- No background fields, i.e., $\mathbf{E}_0 = \mathbf{B}_0 = 0$, we do not consider induced perturbation to the magnetic field, i.e., $\mathbf{B}_1 = 0$. Thus from the set of Maxwell equations only the Poisson equation must be retained
- Both ions and electrons are subjects of thermal motion, their temperatures may be different
- Background density of ions and electrons is the same, i.e., $n_{e0} = n_{i0} = n_0$
- Background is stationary and homogeneous, $\mathbf{u}_{e0} = \mathbf{u}_{i0} = 0$

Then we solve a system of linearised equations

$$mn_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_{e1}}{\partial t} = -en_0 \mathbf{E}_1 - 3K_B T_e \nabla n_{e1}, \quad (5.51)$$

$$\frac{\partial n_{e1}}{\partial t} + n_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{e1} = 0, \quad (5.52)$$

$$Mn_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_{i1}}{\partial t} = en_0 \mathbf{E}_1 - 3K_B T_i \nabla n_{i1}, \quad (5.53)$$

$$\frac{\partial n_{i1}}{\partial t} + n_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{i1} = 0, \quad (5.54)$$

$$\mathbf{E}_1 = -\nabla \phi_1, \quad (5.55)$$

$$\varepsilon_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E}_1 = e(n_{i1} - n_{e1}). \quad (5.56)$$

Ions are much heavier than electrons, thus we may assume that electrons will simply follow the ions and organize themselves so that they shield possible charge concentrations. Therefore, the perturbation to the electron density n_{e1} may be estimated by the Boltzmann relation (4.87), thus

$$n_{e1} = n_e - n_{e0} = n_0 \left(\exp \frac{e\phi_1}{K_B T_e} - 1 \right) \sim n_0 \frac{e\phi_1}{K_B T_e} \quad (5.57)$$

and we may consider (5.51) and (5.52) solved.

Now we take \mathbf{E}_1 from (5.55), insert it into (5.53) and use (5.57) in (5.56). Additionally, we apply a divergence operator to (5.53). We have

$$Mn_0 \frac{\partial \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{i1}}{\partial t} = -en_0 \Delta \phi_1 - 3K_B T_i \Delta n_{i1}, \quad (5.58)$$

$$\frac{\partial n_{i1}}{\partial t} + n_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{i1} = 0, \quad (5.59)$$

$$-\varepsilon_0 \Delta \phi_1 = en_{i1} - en_0 \frac{e\phi_1}{K_B T_e}. \quad (5.60)$$

Now we express $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{i1}$ from (5.59), insert into (5.58) and take a Fourier transform of the two remaining equations. We have

$$\omega^2 M n_{i1} = en_0 k^2 \phi_1 + 3K_B T_i k^2 n_{i1}, \quad (5.61)$$

$$\varepsilon_0 k^2 \phi_1 = en_{i1} - e^2 n_0 \frac{\phi_1}{K_B T_e}. \quad (5.62)$$

Finally, we take ϕ_1 from (5.62), insert into (5.61) and solve for n_{i1} to get

$$\omega^2 = \frac{e^2 n_0 k^2}{M \left(\varepsilon_0 k^2 + \frac{e^2 n_0}{K_B T_e} \right)} + \frac{3K_B T_i k^2}{M}. \quad (5.63)$$

Let $\Omega_p = \sqrt{\frac{e^2 n_0}{M \varepsilon_0}}$ be an *ion plasma frequency*. If we remind Debye length $\lambda_D = \sqrt{\frac{\varepsilon_0 K_B T_e}{n_0 e^2}}$ and ion thermal speed $v_{Ti} = \sqrt{\frac{2K_B T_i}{M}}$, we finally obtain a *dispersion relation of ion acoustic waves*

$$\omega^2 = \frac{\Omega_p^2 \lambda_D^2 k^2}{\lambda_D^2 k^2 + 1} + \frac{3}{2} v_{Ti}^2 k^2. \quad (5.64)$$

For further discussion, let's take one more approximation, the *plasma approximation*. In practice we focus to large-scale effects, thus we set $k\lambda_D \ll 1$. That is essentially equivalent of setting $n_i = n_e$.⁴ Under this approximation, the dispersion relation simplifies to:

$$\omega^2 = k^2 \left(\frac{K_B T_e}{M} + 3 \frac{K_B T_i}{M} \right). \quad (5.65)$$

- Phase speed $v_\varphi = \sqrt{\frac{K_B T_e + 3K_B T_i}{M}} \equiv c_s$ is a speed of sound in plasma. Under the plasma approximation these waves are not dispersive. Dispersivity shows up as the effect of Debye shielding, which is mode-dependent.
- Group speed equals to the phase speed, thus $v_g = v_\varphi = c_s$. Ion waves are waves with constant speed of propagation.
- In laboratory plasmas, $T_i \ll T_e$, thus $c_s \sim \sqrt{\frac{K_B T_e}{M}}$. The propagation speed is essentially set by the *mass of ions* and *temperature of electrons*.
- The waves are longitudinal. We keep the proof to the reader.
- The ion acoustic wave exists only if the thermal motion of at least electrons is possible. Electrons are pulled by ions to ballance the charge concentrations, hence $v_g = v_\varphi$. However, the shielding is not perfect, there exist microscopic accumulations of ions, which propagate as the wave by through a \mathbf{E}_1 field.
- By assuming that $T_i \ll T_e$, the asymptotical dispersion relations read: $\omega = 0$ for $k \rightarrow 0$ and $\omega = \Omega_p$ for $k \rightarrow \infty$. The asymptotical solution for small scales (large k) is fundamentally different from longitudinal *electron* waves.

5.7 Electrostatic waves in background magnetic field

5.7.1 Electron

Electron electrostatic perpendicular waves

- Background magnetic field, no background electric field, i.e., $\mathbf{B}_0 \neq 0$, $\mathbf{E}_0 = 0$
- Ions stationary, thermal motion of electrons is being neglected

⁴Note that by assuming the plasma approximation we consider the bulk densities of ions and electrons to be equal. This does not imply either $n_{i1} = n_{e1}$ or $n_{i0} = n_{e0}$!

- Background density of ions and electrons is the same, i.e., $n_{e0} = n_{i0} = n_0$
- Background is stationary and homogeneous, $\mathbf{u}_{e0} = 0$
- $\mathbf{k} \parallel \mathbf{E}_1$

Let's write the Fourier images of fluid equations for electrons:

$$-i\omega m \mathbf{u}_{e1} = -e(\mathbf{E}_1 + \mathbf{u}_{e1} \times \mathbf{B}_0), \quad (5.66)$$

$$-i\omega n_{e1} + in_0 \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_{e1} = 0, \quad (5.67)$$

$$i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{E}_1 = -\frac{e}{\varepsilon_0} n_{e1}, \quad (5.68)$$

We express \mathbf{E}_1 from (5.66) and combine together (5.67) and (5.68) through n_{e1} .

$$\mathbf{E}_1 = \frac{i\omega m}{e} \mathbf{u}_{e1} - \mathbf{u}_{e1} \times \mathbf{B}_0, \quad (5.69)$$

$$\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{E}_1 = \frac{ien_0}{\varepsilon_0 \omega} \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_{e1}. \quad (5.70)$$

Since we are considering longitudinal waves, $\mathbf{k} \parallel \mathbf{E}_1$, hence $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{E}_1 = kE_1$. Thus equation (5.70) allows to express the amplitude $E_1 = |\mathbf{E}_1|$ of electric field:

$$E_1 = \frac{ien_0}{\varepsilon_0 \omega k} \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_{e1}. \quad (5.71)$$

Let us consider the Cartesian coordinate system, so that $\mathbf{e}_z \parallel \mathbf{B}_0$ and \mathbf{E}_1 lies in the $x - z$ plane. Hence $\mathbf{B}_0 = (0, 0, B_0)$ and $\mathbf{E}_1 = (E_1 \sin \alpha, 0, E_1 \cos \alpha)$, and similarly $\mathbf{k} = (k \sin \alpha, 0, k \cos \alpha)$, where α is the angle between \mathbf{B}_0 and \mathbf{k} . We may then write (5.69) in components

$$\begin{pmatrix} E_1 \sin \alpha \\ 0 \\ E_1 \cos \alpha \end{pmatrix} = \frac{ien_0}{\varepsilon_0 \omega} \begin{pmatrix} u_{e1,x} \sin^2 \alpha \\ 0 \\ u_{e1,z} \cos^2 \alpha \end{pmatrix} = \frac{i\omega m}{e} \begin{pmatrix} u_{e1,x} \\ u_{e1,y} \\ u_{e1,z} \end{pmatrix} - B_0 \begin{pmatrix} u_{e1,y} \\ -u_{e1,x} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (5.72)$$

Then using (5.71), multiplying the whole equation by $\frac{1}{i} \frac{e}{\omega m}$ and using $\omega_p^2 = \frac{e^2 n_0}{\varepsilon_0 m}$ and $\omega_c = \frac{eB}{m}$, and reorganising everything to the left-hand side of the equation we have

$$\begin{pmatrix} u_{e1,x} \\ u_{e1,y} \\ u_{e1,z} \end{pmatrix} - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} \begin{pmatrix} u_{e1,x} \sin^2 \alpha \\ 0 \\ u_{e1,z} \cos^2 \alpha \end{pmatrix} + i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} \begin{pmatrix} u_{e1,y} \\ -u_{e1,x} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = 0. \quad (5.73)$$

Such equation may be written as

$$M_u \cdot \mathbf{u}_{e1} = 0, \quad (5.74)$$

with matrix M_u being

$$M_u = \begin{bmatrix} 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} \sin^2 \alpha & i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} & 0 \\ -i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} \cos^2 \alpha \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.75)$$

Equation (5.74) has only the nontrivial solution if $\det M_u = 0$. To do so, we compute $\det M_u$ using the Laplace expansion using the element in the third row and third column. We have

$$\det M_u = \left(1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} \cos^2 \alpha\right) \left(1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} \sin^2 \alpha - \frac{\omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right) = 0. \quad (5.76)$$

which is the dispersion relation for electrostatic waves in presence of the background magnetic field. Note that the dispersion relation no wave propagates, only oscillations appear in plasma.

Let's discuss two extreme cases. For $\alpha = 0$ hence for oscillatory motions along the magnetic field, we have

$$\left(1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{\omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right) = 0, \quad (5.77)$$

which has two physical solutions

$$\omega^2 = \omega_p^2, \quad \text{and} \quad \omega^2 = \omega_c^2. \quad (5.78)$$

Therefore in the direction of the magnetic field, we have ordinary plasma oscillations and the Larmor rotation.

For $\alpha = \pi/2$, oscillatory motions perpendicular to the background magnetic field, we have

$$1 - \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} - \frac{\omega_c^2}{\omega^2} = 0, \quad (5.79)$$

which may be written as

$$\omega^2 = \omega_p^2 + \omega_c^2 \equiv \omega_h^2. \quad (5.80)$$

The symbol ω_h indicates the upper hybrid frequency, the only possible frequency for electron oscillations perpendicular to \mathbf{B}_0 .

5.7.2 Ion

Ion electrostatic perpendicular waves

- Background magnetic field, no background electric field, i.e., $\mathbf{B}_0 \neq 0$, $\mathbf{E}_0 = 0$
- Electrons are subject of thermal motion if they are allowed to, ions are cold
- Background density of ions and electrons is the same, i.e., $n_{e0} = n_{i0} = n_0$
- Background is stationary and homogeneous, $\mathbf{u}_{e0} = \mathbf{u}_{i0} = 0$
- $\mathbf{k} \parallel \mathbf{E}_1$

In case of the ion waves perpendicular to the background magnetic field, we need to strictly distinguish the two cases: when the waves are *nearly* perpendicular, and when they are *strictly* perpendicular. The difference is fundamental. In case of the nearly perpendicular configuration, there is some, however small, component of the background magnetic field parallel to the wave vector. It is important since in this approximation the electrons follow ions and in such case, they are still able to shield the concentrations of charges via the mechanism of Debye shielding. They are free to move along the magnetic field lines and the shielding is effective. In the case of a strictly perpendicular magnetic field, there is no option for electrons to shield anymore, since they can't move around. Let's investigate the two cases separately.

\mathbf{k} nearly perpendicular to \mathbf{B}_0

In this case we consider the effect of the Debye shielding and thus we can use the Boltzmann relation as a solution to the problem of electrons. We further solve the Euler equation for ions having the form of

$$-i\omega M \mathbf{u}_{i0} = -e\nabla\phi_1 + e\mathbf{u}_{i1} \times \mathbf{B}_0 \quad (5.81)$$

in the Fourier space. In components we have (again, assuming the Cartesian coordinate system, where $\mathbf{k} = k\mathbf{e}_x$ and $\mathbf{B}_0 = B_0\mathbf{e}_z$)

$$-i\omega M u_{i1,x} = -ek\phi_1 + e u_{i1,y} B_0, \quad (5.82)$$

$$-i\omega M u_{i1,y} = -e u_{i1,x} B_0, \quad (5.83)$$

which gives the x -component of the perturbed velocity

$$u_{i1,x} = \frac{ek\phi_1}{\omega M} \left(1 - \frac{\Omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right)^{-1}. \quad (5.84)$$

The continuity equation gives as usually

$$n_{i1} = n_0 \frac{k}{\omega} u_{i1,x}, \quad (5.85)$$

and the electron density perturbation is solved by the Boltzmann relation

$$n_{e1} = n_0 \frac{e\phi_1}{K_B T_e}. \quad (5.86)$$

By assuming the plasma approximation $n_i = n_e$ we have $n_{i1} = n_{e1}$ and hence

$$u_{i1,x} = \frac{\omega e \phi_1}{K_B T_e k}, \quad (5.87)$$

which may be compared to (5.84) to obtain the dispersion relation

$$\omega^2 - \Omega_c^2 = \frac{K_B T_e}{M} k^2. \quad (5.88)$$

Let us remind that the definition of the speed of sound in the plasma reads

$$c_s^2 = \left(\frac{K_B T_e}{M} + \frac{3K_B T_i}{M} \right) \quad (5.89)$$

which has a simpler form due to the assumption of $T_i \rightarrow 0$ (or equivalently, $T_i \ll T_e$). Hence the dispersion relation (5.88) may be rewritten in a form

$$\omega^2 = \Omega_c^2 + k^2 c_s^2. \quad (5.90)$$

This case is possible only if the limiting angle $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} - \alpha$, where α is the angle between \mathbf{k} and \mathbf{B}_0 , is larger than the ratio of ion and electron speed in the direction of \mathbf{B}_0 , hence roughly for $\theta > (m/M)^{1/2}$. In this case, the electrons have kinetic energy (from the thermal motion) large enough to chase the ions and also move around them to shield the originating concentrations of charges. For angles smaller when electrons do not have thermal speed large enough to shield the ion, we need to use a different formalism.

$\mathbf{k} \perp \mathbf{B}_0$

For \mathbf{k} exactly perpendicular to \mathbf{B}_0 there is no component of \mathbf{k} parallel to \mathbf{B}_0 , thus electrons are not allowed to move along the \mathbf{B}_0 and thus they cannot keep the neutrality. Hence we must solve fluid equations for both electrons and ions. The system of equations is closed by using the plasma approximation. Hence we have simply use (5.84) for describing the motions of ions in the direction of wave vector, and equivalently construct the corresponding equation for electrons just by replacing $e \rightarrow -e$ and $M \rightarrow m$. Thus

$$u_{e1,x} = -\frac{ek\phi_1}{\omega m} \left(1 - \frac{\omega_c^2}{\omega^2} \right)^{-1}. \quad (5.91)$$

Similarly for the continuity equation,

$$n_{i1} = n_0 \frac{k}{\omega} u_{i1,x}, \quad (5.92)$$

$$n_{e1} = n_0 \frac{k}{\omega} u_{e1,x}. \quad (5.93)$$

By applying the plasma approximation approach we have $n_{e1} = n_{i1}$ and hence $u_{e1,x} = u_{i1,x}$. Thus

$$M \left(1 - \frac{\Omega_c^2}{\omega^2} \right) = -m \left(1 - \frac{\omega_c^2}{\omega^2} \right), \quad (5.94)$$

and further

$$\omega^2(M + m) = m\omega_c^2 + M\Omega_c^2 = e^2 B_0^2 \left(\frac{1}{m} + \frac{1}{M} \right) = e^2 B_0^2 \left(\frac{m + M}{mM} \right) \quad (5.95)$$

and thus

$$\omega^2 = \frac{eB_0}{m} \frac{eB_0}{M} = \omega_c \Omega_c \equiv \omega_d^2. \quad (5.96)$$

In this case, the oscillations are allowed to have the only one possible frequency, the *lower hybrid frequency*.

5.8 Electromagnetic waves

When discussing the electromagnetic waves, we automatically assume that the resulting solution will fulfill the assumption $\mathbf{k} \perp \mathbf{E}_1$. This assumption should always be verified at the end. In this text, we will keep the verification to the reader. Since they are electromagnetic, we cannot neglect the magnetic component of the wave, thus $\mathbf{B}_1 \neq 0$.

5.8.1 In vacuum: Light waves

Electromagnetic waves in vacuum degenerate to light waves. Thus we need only the set of Maxwell equations.

Electromagnetic waves in vacuum

- No background magnetic or electric field, i.e., $\mathbf{B}_0 = \mathbf{E}_0 = 0$
- No plasma, thus $n_e = n_i = n_0 = 0$, $\mathbf{u}_e = \mathbf{u}_i = 0$
- $\mathbf{k} \perp \mathbf{E}_1$

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{E}_1 = -\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}_1}{\partial t}, \quad (5.97)$$

$$\frac{1}{\mu_0} \nabla \times \mathbf{B}_1 = \varepsilon_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}_1}{\partial t}, \quad (5.98)$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}_1 = 0. \quad (5.99)$$

Now we take a time derivative of (5.97) and apply the curl operator to (5.98). We have

$$\nabla \times \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}_1}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{B}_1}{\partial t^2}, \quad (5.100)$$

$$\frac{1}{\mu_0 \varepsilon_0} \nabla \times \nabla \times \mathbf{B}_1 = \nabla \times \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}_1}{\partial t}, \quad (5.101)$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}_1 = 0. \quad (5.102)$$

Both (5.100) and (5.101) contain the term $\nabla \cdot \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}_1}{\partial t}$. Using this term we combine these two equations and take a Fourier transform of the system of remaining two equations. We have

$$-c^2 \mathbf{k} \times (\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{B}_1) = \omega^2 \mathbf{B}_1, \quad (5.103)$$

$$\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{B}_1 = 0, \quad (5.104)$$

where we used the definition of the *speed of light* $c = \sqrt{(\mu_0 \varepsilon_0)^{-1}}$. The double vector multiplication may be written using two terms. We have

$$-c^2 [(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{B}_1) \mathbf{k} - k^2 \mathbf{B}_1] = \omega^2 \mathbf{B}_1, \quad (5.105)$$

$$\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{B}_1 = 0. \quad (5.106)$$

Now we finally use (5.106) in (5.105) and have

$$c^2 k^2 \mathbf{B}_1 = \omega^2 \mathbf{B}_1, \quad (5.107)$$

which simplifies to

$$\omega^2 = c^2 k^2. \quad (5.108)$$

This is the dispersion relation for electromagnetic waves in vacuum, describing the propagation of light. Obviously, the light waves are non-dispersive and both phase and group speeds equal to the speed of light in vacuum.

5.8.2 In plasma

In plasma, the dispersion relation for electromagnetic waves gets modified due to the charged particles.

Electromagnetic waves in plasma

- No background magnetic or electric field, i.e., $\mathbf{B}_0 = \mathbf{E}_0 = 0$
- Background stationary and homogeneous
- We except large frequencies ($\omega \gg \Omega_p$), thus heavy ions remain stationary, only electrons respond
- Both ions and electrons are cold (no thermal motion)
- $\mathbf{k} \perp \mathbf{E}_1$

We proceed similarly to the case of electromagnetic waves in vacuum, we only need to retain the electric current \mathbf{j}_1 in the Ampère's law.

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{E}_1 = -\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}_1}{\partial t}, \quad (5.109)$$

$$\frac{1}{\mu_0} \nabla \times \mathbf{B}_1 = \varepsilon_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{E}_1}{\partial t} + \mathbf{j}_1. \quad (5.110)$$

Similarly to the previous section, we take a time derivative of (5.110) and apply a curl operator to (5.109) and combine the two using the term $\nabla \times \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}_1}{\partial t}$, which is contained in both equations. We have

$$\nabla \times \nabla \times \mathbf{E}_1 = -\frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{E}_1}{\partial t^2} - \frac{1}{\varepsilon_0 c^2} \frac{\partial \mathbf{j}_1}{\partial t}. \quad (5.111)$$

Again, we take a Fourier transform of the above given equation and split the double vector multiplication into two terms:

$$-(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{E}_1) \mathbf{k} + k^2 \mathbf{E}_1 = \frac{i\omega}{\varepsilon_0 c^2} \mathbf{j}_1 + \frac{\omega^2}{c^2} \mathbf{E}_1. \quad (5.112)$$

From the beginning we search for the dispersion relation of electromagnetic waves, thus we ourselves to the case when $\mathbf{k} \perp \mathbf{E}_1$, hence $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{E}_1 = 0$. Thus (5.112) simplifies to

$$(\omega^2 - c^2 k^2) \mathbf{E}_1 = -\frac{i\omega}{\varepsilon_0} \mathbf{j}_1. \quad (5.113)$$

In the solution we except frequencies much larger than ion plasma frequency, thus the perturbed component of the electric current is composed from electrons only, ions are considered as fixed in space in this approximation. Thus

$$\mathbf{j}_1 = -n_0 e \mathbf{u}_{e1}. \quad (5.114)$$

The fluctuating component of electron velocity \mathbf{u}_{e1} may be obtained from Euler equation for electrons, which for cold plasma with no background magnetic field simplifies to

$$m \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_{e1}}{\partial t} = -e \mathbf{E}_1. \quad (5.115)$$

Hence, the current density \mathbf{j}_1 is

$$\mathbf{j}_1 = -\frac{n_0 e^2}{i\omega m} \mathbf{E}_1, \quad (5.116)$$

where we expressed the Euler equation for electron in the Fourier space. Now we continue to modify (5.113):

$$(\omega^2 - c^2 k^2) \mathbf{E}_1 = \frac{i\omega n_0 e^2}{\varepsilon_0 i\omega m} \mathbf{E}_1 = \frac{n_0 e^2}{\varepsilon_0 m} \mathbf{E}_1 = \omega_p^2 \mathbf{E}_1. \quad (5.117)$$

Hence the *dispersion relation for electromagnetic waves in plasma* reads

$$\omega^2 = \omega_p^2 + c^2 k^2. \quad (5.118)$$

Let's make a few comments

- The dispersion relation describes propagating non-dispersive waves.
- Phase velocity: $v_\varphi^2 = \left(\frac{\omega}{k}\right)^2 = c^2 + \frac{\omega_p^2}{k^2} > c^2$. Phase velocity of these waves is larger than the speed of light. However, it is the phase velocity, thus it does not carry any signal, and the principles of the special theory of relativity are not violated.
- Group velocity: $v_g = d\omega/dk = \frac{2c^2 k}{2\sqrt{\omega_p^2 + c^2 k^2}} = \frac{c^2}{v_\varphi} < c$ for $v_\varphi > c$. The group speed is smaller than the speed of light.
- The waves propagate only for large frequencies, when $\omega > \omega_p$. The electron plasma frequency ω_p serves as a *cut-off frequency*. For frequencies smaller than ω_p the waves do not propagate (the wave vector \mathbf{k} is imaginary). Then we have $ck = (\omega^2 - \omega_p^2)^{1/2} = i\sqrt{\omega_p^2 - \omega^2}$. When taking the spatial part of the Fourier transform (5.10), we find the physical variables to vary as $\exp i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} \sim \exp ikx = \exp \left[-x \frac{\sqrt{\omega_p^2 - \omega^2}}{c} \right] = \exp \left[-\frac{x}{\delta} \right]$, where $\delta = \frac{c}{\sqrt{\omega_p^2 - \omega^2}}$ is the attenuation length.

The electromagnetic waves propagating through plasma may serve as a primitive mean to estimate the plasma density. From measuring the spectrum we find the cut-off frequency, which depends on the plasma density n_0 only. This is being used in astrophysics for example in estimating the plasma density of the solar atmosphere. Imagine that we have a ionised plasma cloud hurled during the solar flare by the magnetic reconnection, which rises in the atmosphere, and acts as a source for difference kinds of plasma waves, including the electromagnetic ones, usually in the band of radio waves. As the cloud rises, the density of ambient plasma decreases, therefore also the cut-off frequency decreases and thus waves at lower frequencies are allowed to escape the region and propagate toward the observer. By measuring the cut-off frequency as a function of time

and estimating the rising speed of the plasma blob, we perform the density scanning of the solar atmosphere.

(Add a story of measuring the density of the interstellar matter from Voyager 1, must confirm what kind of waves were involved and perform the calculation)

5.8.3 Complex of electromagnetic waves in presence of B_0

Electromagnetic waves in plasmas interact mostly with electrons, the heavy ions can't adjust to the large frequencies of the electromagnetic waves. Hence we will solve the system of equations

$$-i\omega m \mathbf{u}_{e1} = -e(\mathbf{E}_1 + \mathbf{u}_{e1} \times \mathbf{B}_0), \quad (5.119)$$

$$i\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{E}_1 = i\omega \mathbf{B}_1, \quad (5.120)$$

$$\frac{i}{\mu_0} \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{B}_1 = -\varepsilon_0 i\omega \mathbf{E}_1 - en_0 \mathbf{u}_{e1}. \quad (5.121)$$

The equations are already written in the form of Fourier images. Note that we did not consider the continuity equation, which over-determines the system. That is because the density perturbation n_{e1} does appear in the continuity equation only. Now we express \mathbf{u}_{e1} from (5.119) and combine (5.120) and (5.121) via \mathbf{B}_1 , where in the combined equation we keep solely \mathbf{E}_1 on the left-hand side:

$$\mathbf{u}_{e1} = -i \frac{e}{m\omega} \mathbf{E}_1 - i \frac{eB_0}{m\omega} \mathbf{u}_{e1} \times \mathbf{b}_0, \quad (5.122)$$

$$\mathbf{E}_1 = -\frac{c^2}{\omega^2} \mathbf{k} \times (\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{E}_1) + i \frac{en_0}{\varepsilon_0 \omega} \mathbf{u}_{e1}, \quad (5.123)$$

where we used the definition of the speed of light $c^2 = (\varepsilon_0 \mu_0)^{-1}$ and defined the unity vector \mathbf{b}_0 in the direction of the magnetic field, so that $\mathbf{B}_0 = B_0 \mathbf{b}_0$. Now we express \mathbf{u}_{e1} from (5.123) as

$$\mathbf{u}_{e1} = -i \frac{\varepsilon_0 \omega}{en_0} \mathbf{E}_1 - i \frac{c^2 \varepsilon_0 \omega}{\omega^2 en_0} \mathbf{k} \times (\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{E}_1) \quad (5.124)$$

and insert it into (5.122). One needs to be careful here, since we find \mathbf{u}_{e1} in (5.122) on both sides of the equation. We further use $\omega_c = eB_0/m$ to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} -i \frac{\varepsilon_0 \omega}{en_0} \mathbf{E}_1 - i \frac{c^2 \varepsilon_0}{\omega en_0} \mathbf{k} \times (\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{E}_1) = \\ -i \frac{e}{m\omega} \mathbf{E}_1 - i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} \left[-i \frac{\varepsilon_0 \omega}{en_0} \mathbf{E}_1 - i \frac{c^2 \varepsilon_0}{\omega en_0} \mathbf{k} \times (\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{E}_1) \right] \times \mathbf{b}_0. \end{aligned} \quad (5.125)$$

Now we express the double cross products and multiply the whole equation by $-\frac{en_0 \omega}{i\varepsilon_0}$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \omega^2 \mathbf{E}_1 + c^2 (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{E}_1) \mathbf{k} - c^2 k^2 \mathbf{E}_1 = \\ = \frac{e^2 n_0}{\varepsilon_0 m} \mathbf{E}_1 - i\omega_c \omega \mathbf{E}_1 \times \mathbf{b}_0 - i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} c^2 (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{E}_1) (\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{b}_0) + i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} c^2 k^2 (\mathbf{E}_1 \times \mathbf{b}_0). \end{aligned} \quad (5.126)$$

By reordering and using $\omega_p^2 = \frac{e^2 n_0}{\epsilon_0 m}$ we have

$$(\omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2) \mathbf{E}_1 + i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} (\omega^2 - c^2 k^2) (\mathbf{E}_1 \times \mathbf{b}_0) + c^2 (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{E}_1) \mathbf{k} + i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} c^2 (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{E}_1) (\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{b}_0) = 0. \quad (5.127)$$

To solve this equation, we introduce the Cartesian coordinate system, so that $\mathbf{B}_0 \parallel \mathbf{e}_z$ and \mathbf{k} lies in the x - z plane. Therefore $\mathbf{b}_0 = (0, 0, 1)$ and $\mathbf{k} = (k \sin \alpha, 0, k \cos \alpha)$, where α is the angle between \mathbf{B}_0 and \mathbf{k} . The electric intensity vector has all components $\mathbf{E}_1 = (E_{1x}, E_{1y}, E_{1z})$. In this particular representation (5.127) turns into

$$\begin{aligned} & (\omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2) \begin{pmatrix} E_{1x} \\ E_{1y} \\ E_{1z} \end{pmatrix} + i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} (\omega^2 - c^2 k^2) \begin{pmatrix} E_{1y} \\ -E_{1x} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \\ & + c^2 (k E_{1x} \sin \alpha + k E_{1z} \cos \alpha) \begin{pmatrix} k \sin \alpha \\ 0 \\ k \cos \alpha \end{pmatrix} + \\ & + i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} c^2 (E_{1x} k \sin \alpha + k E_{1z} \cos \alpha) \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -k \sin \alpha \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (5.128)$$

This is a set of three equations for three components of perturbation of electric intensity, which may we written in the matrix form as

$$M_{\mathbf{E}_1} \cdot \mathbf{E}_1 = 0 \quad (5.129)$$

with system matrix

$$M_{\mathbf{E}_1} = \begin{pmatrix} \omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2 \cos^2 \alpha & i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} (\omega^2 - c^2 k^2) & c^2 k^2 \sin \alpha \cos \alpha \\ -i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} (\omega^2 - c^2 k^2 \cos^2 \alpha) & \omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2 & -i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} c^2 k^2 \cos \alpha \sin \alpha \\ c^2 k^2 \sin \alpha \cos \alpha & 0 & \omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2 \sin^2 \alpha \end{pmatrix}. \quad (5.130)$$

Equation (5.129) has the nontrivial solution when $\det M_{\mathbf{E}_1} = 0$. We expand $\det M_{\mathbf{E}_1}$ around the third row to have

$$\begin{aligned} \det M_{\mathbf{E}_1} &= c^4 k^4 \sin^2 \alpha \cos^2 \alpha \left[\frac{\omega_c^2}{\omega^2} (\omega^2 - c^2 k^2) - (\omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2) \right] + \\ &+ (\omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2 \sin^2 \alpha) \left[(\omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2 \cos^2 \alpha) (\omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2) - \right. \\ &\left. - \frac{\omega_c^2}{\omega^2} (\omega^2 - c^2 k^2) (\omega^2 - c^2 k^2 \cos^2 \alpha) \right] = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (5.131)$$

This is the dispersion relation for a *complex of electromagnetic waves in plasmas*. We will not study two special cases.

Electromagnetic waves parallel to B_0

Waves parallel to B_0 have $\mathbf{k} \parallel B_0$ and thus $\alpha = 0$. The dispersion relation (5.131) simplifies to

$$(\omega^2 - \omega_p^2) \left[(\omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2)^2 - \frac{\omega_c^2}{\omega^2} (\omega^2 - c^2 k^2)^2 \right] = 0. \quad (5.132)$$

This equation has four roots, one of which is not physical. By setting the first parenthesis equal to zero one obtains

$$\omega^2 = \omega_p^2, \quad (5.133)$$

therefore along the magnetic field, the first mode of oscillatory motions is composed of ordinary plasma oscillations.

By setting the second parenthesis equal to zero we obtain other two roots:

$$\omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2 = \pm \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} (\omega^2 - c^2 k^2) \quad (5.134)$$

which may be written as

$$\omega^2 - c^2 k^2 = \frac{\omega_p^2}{1 - \frac{\omega_c}{\omega}} \quad (5.135)$$

and

$$\omega^2 - c^2 k^2 = \frac{\omega_p^2}{1 + \frac{\omega_c}{\omega}}. \quad (5.136)$$

The wave described by (5.135) carries the name *R-wave*, while the other one described by (5.136) is named the *L-wave*. Their names have the origin in their circular polarisation, which we will study in a moment.

- Both waves are dispersive
- We keep the derivation of phase and group speed to the reader, however already from the dispersion relation we see that at the same frequency, the propagation speed of the R-wave is larger.
- Let's investigate the polarisation of these two waves. We start from (5.129) with $\alpha = 0$. We have

$$\begin{pmatrix} \omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2 & i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} (\omega^2 - c^2 k^2) & 0 \\ -i \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} (\omega^2 - c^2 k^2) & \omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \omega^2 - \omega_p^2 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} E_{1x} \\ E_{1y} \\ E_{1z} \end{pmatrix} = 0, \quad (5.137)$$

from which we immediately see that $E_{1z} = 0$. The relation between the two other components is

$$(\omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2)E_{1x} + i\frac{\omega_c}{\omega}(\omega^2 - c^2 k^2)E_{1y} = 0. \quad (5.138)$$

We further use the dispersion relation in a form $c^2 k^2 = \omega^2 - \omega_p^2 (1 \mp \frac{\omega_c}{\omega})^{-1}$ to finally obtain

$$E_{1y} = \pm iE_{1x}. \quad (5.139)$$

Thus we have $E_x = -iE_y$ for the R-wave (the upper sign is valid) and $E_x = iE_y$ for the L-wave. We immediately see that the waves are circularly polarised (the amplitudes of both components are equal and both components are shifted in phase by quarter of circle). By explicitly expressing the spatio-temporal dependence of the electric intensity, $\mathbf{E}_1 = \overline{\mathbf{E}}_1 \exp[i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)] = \overline{\mathbf{E}}_1 [\cos(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t) + i \sin(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)]$. If we introduce a phase shift δ_E between the components and define $E_x = \Re(\mathbf{E}_1) = \overline{\mathbf{E}}_1 \cos(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)$ and $E_y = \Im(\mathbf{E}_1) = \overline{\mathbf{E}}_1 \sin(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t + \delta_E)$ we see that for the R-wave, $\delta_E = \pi/2$ and thus E_y precedes E_x , the wave's polarisation is right-handed. Similarly, in the case of the L-wave, E_y is retarded by $\delta_E = -\pi/2$ and the wave's polarisation is left-handed. Note that the polarisation *does not* depend on the propagation direction, only on the direction of the background magnetic field.

- The R-wave has a cut-off at $\omega_R = \frac{1}{2} [\omega_c + (\omega_c^2 + 4\omega_p^2)^{1/2}]$ (hence the designation of this frequency) and a resonance at ω_c . The L wave has a cut-off at $\omega_L = \frac{1}{2} [-\omega_c + (\omega_c^2 + 4\omega_p^2)^{1/2}]$ and no resonance.

Application: Faraday rotation. The detection of R- and L-waves in the radio spectrum of astrophysical objects allows to estimate either the distance of these objects or the plasma frequency of the interstellar environment. Assume that we have a plane wave composed of both R- and L-waves, which propagates along interstellar \mathbf{B}_0 . As we pointed out, the R-wave propagates faster.

Let us write the vector of electric fields of both considered R- and L-wave in component with respect to some Cartesian coordinate system

$$\mathbf{E}_R = E_0 \exp[i(\mathbf{k}_R \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)] [\mathbf{e}_x + i\mathbf{e}_y], \quad (5.140)$$

$$\mathbf{E}_L = E_0 \exp[i(\mathbf{k}_L \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)] [\mathbf{e}_x - i\mathbf{e}_y]. \quad (5.141)$$

The components are written in agreement with (5.139) and \mathbf{e}_x and \mathbf{e}_y are unity vectors in x and y directions.

The two waves superpose to form one detected wave:

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{E}_R + \mathbf{E}_L) = \frac{1}{2}E_0 e^{-i\omega t} \left[e^{i\mathbf{k}_R \cdot \mathbf{r}} (\mathbf{e}_x + i\mathbf{e}_y) + e^{i\mathbf{k}_L \cdot \mathbf{r}} (\mathbf{e}_x - i\mathbf{e}_y) \right]. \quad (5.142)$$

Should $\mathbf{k}_R = \mathbf{k}_L = \mathbf{k}$ then

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{1}{2}E_0 e^{-i\omega t} \left[2e^{i\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} \mathbf{e}_x \right] = E_0 \exp[i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)] \mathbf{e}_x, \quad (5.143)$$

which is the linearly polarised wave in the x -direction.

In our case, however, $\mathbf{k}_R \neq \mathbf{k}_L$,

$$k_{R,L} = \frac{\omega}{c} \sqrt{1 - \frac{\omega_p^2/\omega^2}{1 \mp \omega_c/\omega}}. \quad (5.144)$$

In the high-frequency regime, for $\omega \gg \omega_c, \omega_p$ by using Taylor series $\sqrt{x} \sim 1 - \frac{x}{2}$ and $(1+x)^{-1} \sim 1-x$ we obtain

$$k_{R,L} \sim \frac{\omega}{c} \left(1 - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} \frac{1}{1 \mp \omega_c/\omega} \right) \sim \frac{\omega}{c} \left[1 - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} \left(1 \pm \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} \right) \right] \quad (5.145)$$

Hence when we use a decomposition of both wave numbers as

$$k_{R,L} = k \pm \Delta k, \quad (5.146)$$

we have

$$k = \frac{\omega}{c} \left[1 - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} \right] \quad (5.147)$$

and

$$\Delta k = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{\omega_p^2 \omega_c}{c \omega^2}. \quad (5.148)$$

By inserting (5.146) into (5.142) we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{E} &= \frac{1}{2} E_0 e^{i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)} \left[e^{i\Delta \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} (\mathbf{e}_x + i\mathbf{e}_y) + e^{-i\Delta \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}} (\mathbf{e}_x - i\mathbf{e}_y) \right] \\ &= E_0 e^{i(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \omega t)} [\cos(-\Delta \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}) \mathbf{e}_x + \sin(-\Delta \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r}) \mathbf{e}_y]. \end{aligned} \quad (5.149)$$

Obviously, the difference in the phase speeds of the R- and L-wave causes the rotation of the polarisation plane of the resulting linearly polarised wave. When adjusting the coordinate system so that $-\Delta \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{r} = -\Delta k z$ the angle of the polarisation φ (it equals to the argument of the goniometric functions) plane fullfills

$$\frac{d\varphi}{dz} = -\Delta k. \quad (5.150)$$

To obtain the total rotation of the polarisation plane for the waves travelling the distance d we must integrate (5.150):

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi &= \int_0^d \frac{d\varphi}{dz} dz = \int_0^d -\Delta k dz = \varphi_0 + \frac{1}{2c\omega^2} \int_0^d \omega_p^2(z) \omega_c(z) dz = \\ &= \varphi_0 + \frac{e^3}{2m^2 \varepsilon_0 c \omega^2} \int_0^d n_0(z) B_0(z) dz. \end{aligned} \quad (5.151)$$

When we approximate both the density and magnetic field by constants, we simply obtain

$$\varphi = \varphi_0 + \frac{e^3}{2m^2\varepsilon_0c} \frac{1}{\omega^2} n_0 B_0 d. \quad (5.152)$$

By measuring the angle of the polarisation plane for various frequencies one may fit this relation and obtain the information about either the properties of the interstellar space, or about the distance of the radiating object.

Electromagnetic waves perpendicular to B_0

Let us go back to the general dispersion relation of the complex of electromagnetic waves in plasmas (5.131) and discuss the other special case, when $\alpha = \pi/2$. The dispersion relation simplifies to

$$(\omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2) [(\omega^2 - \omega_p^2)(\omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2) - \omega_c^2(\omega^2 - c^2 k^2)] = 0. \quad (5.153)$$

This equation again has two solutions. By zeroing the first parenthesis we obtain

$$\omega^2 = \omega_p^2 + c^2 k^2, \quad (5.154)$$

which is the dispersion relation identical to the electromagnetic waves in non-magnetised plasmas. Due to this correspondence, this waves is called *ordinary* or the *O-mode*. It linearly polarized with $\mathbf{E}_1 \parallel \mathbf{B}_0$. It has a cut-off at the plasma frequency.

By zeroing the second parenthesis we have

$$(\omega^2 - \omega_p^2)(\omega^2 - \omega_p^2 - c^2 k^2) = \omega_c^2(\omega^2 - c^2 k^2), \quad (5.155)$$

which by expressing $\omega^2 - c^2 k^2$ from both sides and rearranging becomes

$$\omega^2 - c^2 k^2 = \omega_p^2 \frac{\omega^2 - \omega_p^2}{\omega^2 - \omega_h^2}, \quad (5.156)$$

where we used the definition of the upper hybrid frequency $\omega_h^2 = \omega_p^2 + \omega_c^2$. Such wave is termed the *extraordinary wave* or the *X-mode*. It is partly transversal and partly longitudinal, it propagates perpendicularly to \mathbf{B}_0 . As the density is increased, the phase velocity rises from c until the cut-off at ω_R is reached. As the density is further increased, the wave is evanescent until the resonance at the upper hybrid frequency ω_h . Then it can propagate again until the second cut-off at ω_L . The cut-off frequencies are given by: $\omega_R = \frac{1}{2} [\omega_c + (\omega_c^2 + 4\omega_p^2)^{1/2}]$ and $\omega_L = \frac{1}{2} [-\omega_c + (\omega_c^2 + 4\omega_p^2)^{1/2}]$.

For the O- and X-modes the plasma acts as birefringent environment.

5.9 MHD waves

By MHD waves (A.K.A. hydromagnetic waves) we understand low frequency ion oscillations in the presence of the magnetic field. A special case is the Alfvén wave.

5.10 Alfvén wave

Alfvén waves

- Background magnetic field, no background electric field, i.e., $\mathbf{B}_0 \neq 0$, $\mathbf{E}_0 = 0$
- Background stationary and homogeneous
- We solve equations of motion for both ions and electrons
- Both ions and electrons are cold (no thermal motion)

We introduce the Cartesian coordinate system $(\mathbf{e}_x, \mathbf{e}_y, \mathbf{e}_z)$, so that:

- $\mathbf{B}_0 = B_0 \mathbf{e}_z$,
- $\mathbf{E}_1 \parallel \mathbf{j}_1 \parallel \mathbf{e}_x$, $\mathbf{E}_1 \perp \mathbf{B}_0$,
- $\mathbf{B}_1 \parallel \mathbf{u}_1 \parallel \mathbf{e}_y$,
- $\mathbf{k} \parallel \mathbf{B}_0$, $\mathbf{B}_1 \perp \mathbf{E}_1$.

Again, we use the solution of the system of Maxwell equations (5.109) and (5.110) from the previous section by directly using (5.113):

$$(\omega^2 - c^2 k^2) \mathbf{E}_1 = -\frac{i\omega}{\varepsilon_0} \mathbf{j}_1. \quad (5.157)$$

We do not assume that the ion create a stationary background, thus the current density \mathbf{j}_1 is proportional to the difference between fluctuation speed of ions and electrons. Hence

$$\mathbf{j}_1 = j_1 \mathbf{e}_x = n_0 e (u_{i1x} - u_{e1x}) \mathbf{e}_x. \quad (5.158)$$

The background is assumed static, thus we further drop the index 1 to denote that the fluctuating part of the particle velocity is discussed. Hereafter, $u_{ix} = u_{i1x}$ and $u_{ex} = u_{e1x}$ and similarly for the y -components. Expression for both velocity fluctuations must be obtained from the Euler equations. For ions we have

$$M \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_{i1}}{\partial t} = e(\mathbf{E}_1 + \mathbf{u}_{i1} \times \mathbf{B}_0), \quad (5.159)$$

which in components and in the Fourier space gives

$$-i\omega M u_{ix} = eE_1 + eu_{iy}B_0, \quad (5.160)$$

$$-i\omega M u_{iy} = -eu_{ix}B_0. \quad (5.161)$$

By combining these two equations we have

$$-i\omega M u_{ix} = eE_1 + eB_0 \frac{eB_0}{i\omega M} u_{ix} \quad (5.162)$$

and after some algebra we obtain

$$u_{ix} = \frac{ie}{\omega M} \left(1 - \frac{\Omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right)^{-1} E_1. \quad (5.163)$$

Similarly [e.g. by inserting (5.163) into (5.161)], we obtain for u_{iy} :

$$u_{iy} = \frac{e}{\omega M} \frac{\Omega_c}{\omega} \left(1 - \frac{\Omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right)^{-1} E_1. \quad (5.164)$$

We solve the Euler's equation for electrons by analogy (formally by application of the following substitutions: $M \rightarrow m$, $e \rightarrow -e$, and $\Omega_c \rightarrow -\omega_c$), to obtain:

$$u_{ex} = -\frac{ie}{\omega m} \left(1 - \frac{\omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right)^{-1} E_1, \quad (5.165)$$

$$u_{ey} = -\frac{e}{\omega m} \frac{-\omega_c}{\omega} \left(1 - \frac{\omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right)^{-1} E_1. \quad (5.166)$$

We expect low-frequency waves. Thus we are allowed to use the approximation $\omega_c \gg \omega$. Under this approximation (5.165) and (5.166) becomes:

$$u_{ex} = -\frac{ie}{\omega m} \left(\frac{\omega^2 - \omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right)^{-1} E_1 \sim \frac{ie}{\omega m} \frac{\omega^2}{\omega_c^2} E_1 \rightarrow 0 \quad (5.167)$$

and

$$u_{ey} = \frac{e}{\omega m} \frac{\omega_c}{\omega} \left(\frac{\omega^2 - \omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right)^{-1} E_1 \sim -\frac{e}{\omega m} \frac{\omega_c \omega^2}{\omega_c^2} E_1 = -\frac{e}{\omega_c m} E_1 = -\frac{E_1}{B_0}. \quad (5.168)$$

Now we use the obtained estimates for the fluctuating speeds (5.163) and (5.167) and use them in (5.158), which we use in (5.157).

$$\begin{aligned} (\omega^2 - c^2 k^2) E_1 &= -\frac{i\omega}{\varepsilon_0} n_0 e \left[\frac{ie}{\omega M} \left(1 - \frac{\Omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right)^{-1} E_1 - 0 \right] = \\ &= \frac{n_0 e^2}{\varepsilon_0 M} \left(1 - \frac{\Omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right)^{-1} E_1 = \Omega_p^2 \left(1 - \frac{\Omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right)^{-1} E_1. \end{aligned} \quad (5.169)$$

Hence the dispersion relation reads

$$\omega^2 - c^2 k^2 = \Omega_p^2 \left(1 - \frac{\Omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right)^{-1}. \quad (5.170)$$

If we limit ourselves to the case, when $\omega \ll \Omega_c$, which is a very strong assumptions, we basically say that we are interested only in the very low-frequency waves, the dispersion relation simplifies to

$$\omega^2 - c^2 k^2 = \Omega_p^2 \left(\frac{\omega^2 - \Omega_c^2}{\omega^2}\right)^{-1} \sim -\omega^2 \frac{\Omega_p^2}{\Omega_c^2} = -\omega^2 \frac{n_0 M}{\varepsilon_0 B_0^2} = -\omega^2 \frac{\rho}{\varepsilon_0 B_0^2}. \quad (5.171)$$

Hence

$$\frac{\omega^2}{k^2} = \frac{c^2}{1 + \frac{\rho}{\varepsilon_0 B_0^2}}. \quad (5.172)$$

In plasma the expression $1 + \frac{\rho}{\varepsilon_0 B_0^2}$ has a meaning of the square-root of relative permittivity ε_r , which in plasmas is usually much larger than unity. Hence $\frac{\rho}{\varepsilon_0 B_0^2} \gg 1$ and we have

$$\frac{\omega^2}{k^2} = \frac{c^2}{\frac{\rho \mu_0 c^2}{B_0^2}} = \frac{B_0^2}{\mu_0 \rho}. \quad (5.173)$$

Thus the *dispersion relation for Alfvén waves* reads

$$\frac{\omega}{k} = \frac{B_0}{\sqrt{\mu_0 \rho}} \equiv c_A. \quad (5.174)$$

c_A is the *Alfvén speed*.

Notes:

- Figure
- Magnetic component of the wave, B_y , is in the y direction and looks like sinusoid stringing the field lines of the background magnetic field
- We have a drift $v_y = E_1 e_x \times \mathbf{B}_0 / B_0^2$, which is the same for both ions and electrons
- The phase speed of the perturbations to the field lines equals to the speed of both ions and electrons. To prove it, let's take the Fourier image of the induction equation without the dissipative term $\omega B_1 = k v_{y,B} B_0$ and the Faraday's law $k E_1 = -\omega B_1$. Combining the two we obtain $v_{y,B} = -\frac{\omega}{k} \frac{k}{\omega} \frac{E_1}{B_0} = -\frac{E_1}{B_0}$, which is the expression for the speed of particles. Therefore, both the fluid and the perturbed magnetic field oscillate together. The plasma is frozen in the magnetic field.
- The results we obtained are valid only if there is no background electric field parallel to the magnetic.

- Alfvén speed is a characteristic speed of propagation of perturbations to the magnetic field. This may yield important estimates. For example, sunspots are believed to be caused by the flux tube, which was perturbed at the base of the solar convection zone and rises up to the photosphere. The characteristic time of rise may be roughly estimated when using the Alfvén speed as the estimate for the rising speed. For the Sun, assuming the depth of the convection zone to be 200 Mm, the average bulk density in the convection zone 200 kg m^{-3} , and the initial field strength in the perturbed flux tube to be 10 kG=1 T. Then we have $\tau \sim \frac{d}{c_A} \sim \frac{200 \times 10^6}{\frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi \times 10^{-7} \cdot 200}}} \text{ s} \sim 36 \text{ days}$. This estimate is not far from the more appropriate modelling, which includes a detailed balance of the rising flux tube and the ambient solar plasma. The characteristic rising time is larger than the solar rotation period, thus one should expect the deflection of the rising flux tube due to the Coriolis force.

5.11 General MHD waves

As the final case, let us study the general case of magnetohydrodynamic waves. Hence, we will solve the linearised version of the following system of equations:

$$\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} = 0, \quad (5.175)$$

$$\rho \frac{d\mathbf{u}}{dt} = -\nabla p + (\nabla \times \mathbf{B}) \times \mathbf{B} / \mu_0, \quad (5.176)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{p}{\rho^\gamma} \right) = 0, \quad (5.177)$$

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}), \quad (5.178)$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0. \quad (5.179)$$

Note that:

- We assume a homogeneous and stationary background and no background motion ($\mathbf{u}_0 = 0$)
- We collapse the set of Maxwell equations into the induction equation with no dissipative terms, to the Gauss's law for magnetism and explicitly use Ampère's law in the expression for the Lorentz force
- We assume the adiabatic approximation to the equation of state.

Except for the equation of state, the linearisation is trivial and can be done from the top of anyone's head:

$$\frac{\partial \rho_1}{\partial t} + \rho_0 (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_1) = 0, \quad (5.180)$$

$$\rho_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_1}{\partial t} = -\nabla p_1 + (\nabla \times \mathbf{B}_1) \times \mathbf{B}_0 / \mu_0, \quad (5.181)$$

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}_1}{\partial t} = \nabla \times (\mathbf{u}_1 \times \mathbf{B}_0), \quad (5.182)$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}_1 = 0. \quad (5.183)$$

The equation of state needs to be done more carefully. Let us do a slow derivation, in each step we immediately neglect the second and higher order terms:

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \nabla \right\} \left[\frac{p_0 + p_1}{(\rho_0 + \rho_1)^\gamma} \right] = \\ &= \frac{1}{(\rho_0 + \rho_1)^\gamma} \left[\frac{\partial p_1}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \nabla) p_0 \right] + (p_0 + p_1) \left\{ \frac{-\gamma}{(\rho_0 + \rho_1)^{\gamma+1}} \left[\frac{\partial \rho_1}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \nabla) \rho_0 \right] \right\} = \\ &= \frac{1}{(\rho_0 + \rho_1)^\gamma} \left[\frac{\partial p_1}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \nabla) p_0 - \gamma \frac{p_0 + p_1}{\rho_0 + \rho_1} \frac{\partial \rho_1}{\partial t} - \gamma \frac{p_0 + p_1}{\rho_0 + \rho_1} (\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \nabla) \rho_0 \right] = \\ &= \frac{1}{(\rho_0 + \rho_1)^\gamma} \left\{ \frac{\partial p_1}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \nabla) p_0 - c_s^2 \left[\frac{\partial \rho_1}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \nabla) \rho_0 \right] \right\}, \end{aligned} \quad (5.184)$$

where we used the definition of the speed of sound $c_s^2 = \gamma p_0 / \rho_0$ and we evaluated term $\frac{p_0 + p_1}{\rho_0 + \rho_1}$ already in Section 5.2. Since the term $\frac{1}{(\rho_0 + \rho_1)^\gamma}$ is some non-zero number, the expression in curly parentheses must be zero, which is our linearised equation of state (by further taking into account that the background is homogeneous):

$$\frac{\partial p_1}{\partial t} - c_s^2 \frac{\partial \rho_1}{\partial t} = 0. \quad (5.185)$$

Thus we combine (5.180), (5.181), (5.182), (5.183), and (5.185) to obtain the dispersion relation. We start from taking a time derivative of (5.181):

$$\frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{u}_1}{\partial t^2} = -\frac{1}{\rho_0} \nabla \frac{\partial p_1}{\partial t} + (\nabla \times \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}_1}{\partial t}) \times \frac{\mathbf{B}_0}{\rho_0 \mu_0}. \quad (5.186)$$

Now we use (5.185) and have

$$\frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{u}_1}{\partial t^2} = -\frac{1}{\rho_0} \nabla \left(c_s^2 \frac{\partial \rho_1}{\partial t} \right) + (\nabla \times \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}_1}{\partial t}) \times \frac{\mathbf{B}_0}{\rho_0 \mu_0} \quad (5.187)$$

and further by using (5.180) and (5.182) we have

$$\frac{\partial^2 \mathbf{u}_1}{\partial t^2} = c_s^2 \nabla (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_1) + \{ \nabla \times [\nabla \times (\mathbf{u}_1 \times \mathbf{B}_0)] \} \times \frac{\mathbf{B}_0}{\rho_0 \mu_0}. \quad (5.188)$$

The equation is being solved in the Fourier space again:

$$\begin{aligned}\omega^2 \mathbf{u}_1 &= c_s^2 \mathbf{k}(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1) + \{\mathbf{k} \times [\mathbf{k} \times (\mathbf{u}_1 \times \mathbf{B}_0)]\} \times \frac{\mathbf{B}_0}{\mu_0 \rho_0} \\ &= c_s^2 \mathbf{k}(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1) + \{\mathbf{k} \times [\mathbf{k} \times (\mathbf{u}_1 \times \mathbf{b}_0)]\} \times \mathbf{b}_0 c_A^2,\end{aligned}\quad (5.189)$$

where we used $\mathbf{b}_0 = \mathbf{B}_0/|\mathbf{B}_0|$ and $c_A^2 = B_0^2/(\mu_0 \rho_0)$ is the Alfvén speed. The complicated multiplication of the right-hand side is

$$\begin{aligned}\{\mathbf{k} \times [\mathbf{k} \times (\mathbf{u}_0 \times \mathbf{b}_0)]\} \times \mathbf{b}_0 &= \{\mathbf{k} \times [\mathbf{u}_1(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{b}_0) - \mathbf{b}_0(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1)]\} \times \mathbf{b}_0 = \\ &= (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{b}_0)[(\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{u}_1) \times \mathbf{b}_0] - (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1)[(\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{b}_0) \times \mathbf{b}_0] = \\ &= -(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{b}_0)[\mathbf{k}(\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \mathbf{b}_0) - \mathbf{u}_1(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{b}_0)] + (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1)[\mathbf{k}b_0^2 - \mathbf{b}_0(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{b}_0)] = \\ &= (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{b}_0)^2 \mathbf{u}_1 - (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1)(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{b}_0)\mathbf{b}_0 + \mathbf{k}[\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1 - (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{b}_0)(\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \mathbf{b}_0)].\end{aligned}\quad (5.190)$$

No we use $\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{b}_0 = k \cos \alpha$, where α is the field inclination. We continue evaluating (5.189):

$$\omega^2 \mathbf{u}_1 = c_s^2 \mathbf{k}(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1) + c_A^2 \{(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{b}_0)^2 \mathbf{u}_1 - (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1)(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{b}_0)\mathbf{b}_0 + \mathbf{k}[\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1 - (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{b}_0)(\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \mathbf{b}_0)]\}, \quad (5.191)$$

thus

$$\frac{\omega^2 \mathbf{u}_1}{c_A^2} = k^2 \cos^2 \alpha \mathbf{u}_1 - (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1)k \cos \alpha \mathbf{b}_0 + \mathbf{k} \left[\left(1 + \frac{c_s^2}{c_A^2}\right) (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1) - k \cos \alpha (\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \mathbf{b}_0) \right]. \quad (5.192)$$

We take the projections of (5.192) first into the direction of \mathbf{k}

$$\begin{aligned}\omega^2(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1) &= k^2 c_A^2 \cos^2 \alpha (\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \mathbf{k}) - c_A^2 k^2 \cos^2 \alpha (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1) + \\ &+ c_A^2 (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1)k^2 + c_s^2 (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1)k^2 - c_A^2 k^3 \cos \alpha (\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \mathbf{b}_0).\end{aligned}\quad (5.193)$$

Hence

$$[-\omega^2 + c_A^2 k^2 + c_s^2 k^2](\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \mathbf{k}) = c_A^2 k^3 \cos \alpha (\mathbf{b}_0 \cdot \mathbf{u}_1). \quad (5.194)$$

Then we project (5.192) into the direction of \mathbf{b}_0 .

$$\begin{aligned}\omega^2(\mathbf{b}_0 \cdot \mathbf{u}_1) &= c_A^2 k^2 \cos^2 \alpha (\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \mathbf{b}_0) - c_A^2 (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1)k \cos \alpha + \\ &+ c_A^2 (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1)k \cos \alpha + c_s^2 (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1)k \cos \alpha - c_A^2 k^2 \cos^2 \alpha (\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \mathbf{b}_0),\end{aligned}\quad (5.195)$$

hence

$$\omega^2(\mathbf{b}_0 \cdot \mathbf{u}_1) = c_s^2 (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_1)k \cos \alpha. \quad (5.196)$$

Equation (5.194) may further be played with:

$$\frac{\mathbf{b}_0 \cdot \mathbf{u}_1}{\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \mathbf{k}} = \frac{-\omega^2 + c_A^2 k^2 + c_s^2 k^2}{c_A^2 k^3 \cos \alpha} \quad (5.197)$$

and similarly (5.196) becomes

$$\frac{\mathbf{b}_0 \cdot \mathbf{u}_1}{\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \mathbf{k}} = \frac{c_s^2 k \cos \alpha}{\omega^2}. \quad (5.198)$$

These two equations equal, thus we have

$$\frac{-\omega^2 + c_A^2 k^2 + c_s^2 k^2}{c_A^2 k^3 \cos \alpha} = \frac{c_s^2 k \cos \alpha}{\omega^2} \quad (5.199)$$

and therefore

$$\omega^4 - \omega^2 k^2 (c_A^2 + c_s^2) + c_s^2 c_A^2 k^4 \cos^2 \alpha = 0. \quad (5.200)$$

When assuming $\omega/k > 0$ for the wave propagating outwards, we have a solution:

$$\frac{\omega}{k} = \left[\frac{1}{2}(c_s^2 + c_A^2) \pm \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{c_s^4 + c_A^4 - 4c_s^2 c_A^2 \cos^2 \alpha + 2c_A^2 c_s^2} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}}. \quad (5.201)$$

This is the general dispersion relation for the *magnetoacoustic wave*. The one with the plus sign is called a *fast wave*, while the one with the minus sign is called the *slow wave*. Obviously, the speed of propagation depends on the direction of propagation with respect to the vector of the background magnetic field.

For waves travelling *along* the magnetic field $\alpha = 0$ we have:

$$\left(\frac{\omega}{k}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{2}(c_s^2 + c_A^2) \pm \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{c_s^4 + c_A^4 - 2c_A^2 c_s^2} = \frac{1}{2}(c_s^2 + c_A^2) \pm \frac{1}{2}(c_s^2 - c_A^2) = \begin{cases} c_s^2 \\ c_A^2 \end{cases}, \quad (5.202)$$

for $c_s > c_A$ and oppositely for $c_A > c_s$. In summary we may write that the *fast mode* has a dispersion relation $\omega/k = \max(c_s, c_A)$, whereas the *slow mode* disperses according to $\omega/k = \min(c_s, c_A)$. Note that as a special case of waves propagating along the field, we obtained the dispersion relation for the Alfvén wave. Also the *slow wave*, which is purely acoustic, propagates. For waves travelling across the field for $\alpha = \pi/2$ we have

$$\left(\frac{\omega}{k}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{2}(c_s^2 + c_A^2) \pm \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{c_s^4 + c_A^4 + 2c_A^2 c_s^2} = \frac{1}{2}(c_s^2 + c_A^2) \pm \frac{1}{2}(c_s^2 + c_A^2) = \begin{cases} c_s^2 + c_A^2 \\ 0 \end{cases}, \quad (5.203)$$

therefore only the *fast wave* propagates. In a special case of no background field, i.e. $\mathbf{b}_0 = 0$ we simply have $c_A = 0$ and thus

$$\left(\frac{\omega}{k}\right)^2 = \begin{cases} 0 \\ c_s^2 \end{cases}, \quad (5.204)$$

and the wave just degenerates to the ordinary acoustic wave.

5.11.1 Mode conversion

In the stratified medium, we should supply additional terms in our equations (namely the gravitation term) and drop the requirement of the homogeneous background. In some cases we may find surfaces, where the sound speed equals the Alfvén speed, the *equipartition surface* (prove that at this surface, the plasma β equals one). Here all the dispersion relations collapse and the waves are resonant. The use of the simple ray approximation (which we were using all the time) is not appropriate in these regions, finite-wavelength effects play an important role. Using the higher-order theory one may find⁵ that a *mode conversion* may occur. Essential in the equipartition layers the waves convert types, purely acoustic wave may become magnetoacoustic fast wave etc. The efficiency of the conversion depends on an incident angle to the magnetic field.

The mode conversion is an effect which essentially prohibits reliable helioseismic tomography of the Sun beneath sunspots. The sunspots are regions of the strong field, thus there definitely is the equipartition layer below the surface of the Sun. The (purely acoustic) seismic waves excited by the vigorous surface convection propagate through the convection zone (in the stratified medium, thus they do not propagate straight but rather bend as the local sound speed varies), go through the equipartition layer and partly convert to the magnetoacoustic modes. They undergo one more conversion after total reflection from the surface. As a consequence the total power of the acoustic waves, which is measured and analysed by helioseismology, is lower in the regions of the strong field, leading to unknown large systematic errors in analyses.

Similarly, the acoustic waves in the solar atmosphere are totally reflected at the temperature minimum region (lower chromosphere, $T \sim 4200$ K), where the acoustic cut-off frequency is around 5.2 mHz (the cut-off frequency is a function of the local plasma state parameters, $\omega_{\text{cut-off}} = \frac{\gamma g}{2c_s}$, where g is the local gravity acceleration. However, in the magnetised regions, the magnetoacoustic waves are allowed to propagate along the magnetic field. Thus when the conversion takes place, the originally acoustic waves may leak to the higher atmosphere as converted magnetoacoustic and Alfvén waves. Numerical simulations revealed that the inclined magnetic field acts as a factor lowering the cut-off frequency, which is then modified to $\omega_{\text{cut-off}} = \frac{\gamma g \cos \alpha}{2c_s}$, where α is the magnetic field inclination to the local vertical. In the magnetised regions with inclined magnetic field the sound waves excited by the solar convection may carry some non-negligible acoustic flux to the chromosphere and thus contributing to its heating⁶.

⁵e.g. Cally, P. 2006: *Dispersion relations, rays and ray splitting in magnetohelioseismology*, Royal Society of London Transactions Series A 364, p.333–349

⁶e.g. Sobotka, M., Švanda, M., Jurčák, J. et al. 2013: *Dynamics of the solar atmosphere above a pore with a light bridge*, Astronomy&Astrophysics, in press, [ArXiv:1309.7790S](https://arxiv.org/abs/1309.7790S)

Chapter 6

Diffusion

6.1 Diffusion in weakly ionised plasmas

In Section 4.2 we introduced an additional term to the Euler equation accounting for collisions between particles. We defined the particle flux Γ

$$\mathbf{\Gamma} = n\mathbf{u}, \quad (6.1)$$

where n was the particle density and \mathbf{u} their speed.

The formalism used here is similar. For simplicity, let us assume that the particles flow along the x -axis of the Cartesian coordinate system. By collisions occurring along the spatial interval dx , the fraction of the flux $d\Gamma$ is lost. We may write

$$d\Gamma = -n_n\sigma\Gamma dx, \quad (6.2)$$

where n_n is the density of neutral particles, because we expect the collisions to be dominated by neutral particles. σ is the effective cross-section of the collisions. From the effective cross-section we may define useful quantities $\lambda_s = 1/n_n\sigma$ to be the mean free path between the consecutive collisions and similarly the mean collisional frequency $\nu = n_n\bar{\sigma}u$, where the overbar indicates the averaging over the velocity space. The averaging is performed because the quantum mechanics teaches us that the effective cross-section may be a function of velocity. The mean period between the consecutive collisions is then $\tau = 1/\nu$.

By taking the time derivative of (6.1) and (6.2) when for simplicity neglecting the possible time dependence of other variables but the coordinates and velocity and using the definition of Γ we have

$$\frac{d\mathbf{\Gamma}}{dt} = n\frac{d\mathbf{u}}{dt} = -n_n\sigma n\mathbf{u}\frac{dx}{dt} = -n_n\sigma n\mathbf{u}u = -\nu\mathbf{u}, \quad (6.3)$$

Hence

$$\frac{d\mathbf{u}}{dt} = -\nu\mathbf{u}, \quad (6.4)$$

which is the (average) velocity change due to the collisions.

Hence the Euler equation with magnetic field set to zero and with collisional term added reads

$$mn \left[\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u} \right] = qn\mathbf{E} - \nabla p - mn\nu\mathbf{u} \quad (6.5)$$

Let's investigate the system where $\frac{d}{dt}\mathbf{u} = 0$ (in such system we find only a constant motion due to the diffusion). Then

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{q\mathbf{E}}{m\nu} - \frac{K_{\text{B}}T\nabla n}{mn\nu} = \frac{\mathbf{\Gamma}}{n}, \quad (6.6)$$

where we used the definition of the particle flux. By introducing mobility $\mu = \frac{q \text{sgn} q}{m\nu}$ and diffusion coefficient $D = \frac{K_{\text{B}}T}{m\nu}$ we have for the particle species j

$$\mathbf{\Gamma}_j = \text{sgn} q n \mu_j \mathbf{E} - D_j \nabla n. \quad (6.7)$$

For $\mathbf{E} = 0$ we have

$$\mathbf{\Gamma} = -D\nabla n, \quad (6.8)$$

which is the form of *Fick law* for diffusion. The simple interpretation of this useful relation is that the particles flow from locations with the higher density to lower density regions, which is to be expected. In plasmas the Fick law is generalised to (6.7) noting the effect of the electric field. One should also note that the coefficients μ_j and D_j may be generally different for various particle species (most often electrons and ions) and hence the diffusion in plasmas may cause the separation of charges and thus drive the electric field. However, to fulfill the quasineutrality of plasma, $\mathbf{\Gamma}_i = \mathbf{\Gamma}_e = \mathbf{\Gamma}$ on scales $L \gg \lambda_{\text{D}}$, which allows us to derive the necessary electric field which will keep the plasma quasineutral.

By assuming the plasma approximation $n_e = n_i = n$ we have

$$n\mu_i \mathbf{E} - D_i \nabla n = -n\mu_e \mathbf{E} - D_e \nabla n \quad (6.9)$$

and hence

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{D_i - D_e}{\mu_i + \mu_e} \frac{\nabla n}{n} \quad (6.10)$$

is the induced electric field triggered by the separation of charges. This is the repulsive electric field, which stops the charges from further separation due to the diffusion and hence keeps plasma neutral on large scales. This electric field causes the electrons to slow down and accelerate ions simultaneously, so that the bulk of plasma (with charges separated on scales smaller than λ_{D}) diffuses according to modified Fick law. This is the basic picture of *ambipolar diffusion*.

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{\Gamma} = \mathbf{\Gamma}_i &= n\mu_i \frac{D_i - D_e}{\mu_i + \mu_e} \frac{\nabla n}{n} - D_i \nabla n = \\ &= \frac{\mu_i D_i - \mu_i D_e - \mu_i D_i - \mu_e D_i}{\mu_i + \mu_e} \nabla n = -\frac{\mu_i D_e + \mu_e D_i}{\mu_i + \mu_e} \nabla n = \\ &\equiv -D_{\text{a}} \nabla n, \end{aligned} \quad (6.11)$$

where D_a is the coefficient of the ambipolar diffusion. For $\mu_e \gg \mu_i$ and using the definition of mobility coefficient we have

$$D_a = \frac{\mu_i D_e + \mu_e D_i}{\mu_i + \mu_e} \approx D_i + \frac{\mu_i}{\mu_e} D_e = \left(1 + \frac{T_e}{T_i}\right) D_i. \quad (6.12)$$

Thus the coefficient of the ambipolar diffusion is mostly determined by the diffusion coefficients for ions with some correction.

As an example, let's take the continuum equation

$$\frac{\partial n}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot n\mathbf{u} = 0, \quad (6.13)$$

and hence

$$\frac{\partial n}{\partial t} = -\nabla \cdot n\mathbf{u} = -\nabla \cdot \mathbf{\Gamma} = D_a \Delta n. \quad (6.14)$$

This equation is similar to the heat conduction equation. It may be solved by assuming the 1-D solution separating the variables $n(x, t) = T(t)S(x)$, where T and S are some functions. Then

$$S \frac{dT}{dt} = D_a T \Delta S, \quad (6.15)$$

and hence

$$\frac{1}{T} \frac{dT}{dt} = \frac{D_a}{S} \Delta S = \text{const} = -\frac{1}{\tau}. \quad (6.16)$$

Both sides of the equations must equal the same constant because the left-hand side depends purely on time, thus the right-hand side can't depend on time and vice versa for the spatial dependency of the right-hand side. From the dimension reasons this constant must have the dimension of the reciprocal time. The equation may then be solved by parts

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = -\frac{T}{\tau} \quad \rightarrow \quad T = T_0 e^{-\frac{t}{\tau}} \quad (6.17)$$

and

$$\frac{d^2 S}{dx^2} = -\frac{1}{D_a \tau} S, \quad (6.18)$$

which has the solution in the series of harmonic functions.

This equation must be supplied with the boundary conditions. Let's assume a simple model of plasma confined between two infinite planparallel walls, where the density of the plasma vanishes outside interval $x \in (-L, L)$. Then the solution to the problem is

$$n = n_0 \left\{ \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} a_{e,l} e^{-\frac{t}{\tau_{e,l}}} \cos \left[\frac{(l + \frac{1}{2})\pi x}{L} \right] + \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} a_{o,m} e^{-\frac{t}{\tau_{o,m}}} \sin \left[\frac{m\pi x}{L} \right] \right\} \quad (6.19)$$

The coefficients $\tau_{e,l}$ and $\tau_{o,m}$ may be determined from inserting the solution above into (6.15) and comparing the terms one by one. For the first term ($l = 0$) in the cosine series we have

$$-a_{e,0}e^{-\frac{t}{\tau_{e,0}}}\frac{1}{\tau_{e,0}}\cos\frac{\pi x}{2L} = -D_a a_{e,0}e^{-\frac{t}{\tau_{e,0}}}\left(\frac{\pi}{2L}\right)^2\cos\frac{\pi x}{2L} \quad (6.20)$$

and hence

$$\tau_{e,0} = \frac{4L^2}{\pi^2 D_a}. \quad (6.21)$$

For a general mode l we would similarly find

$$\tau_{e,l} = \frac{L^2}{(l + \frac{1}{2})^2 \pi^2 D_a}. \quad (6.22)$$

For the first term ($m = 1$) in the sine series we have

$$-a_{o,1}e^{-\frac{t}{\tau_{o,1}}}\frac{1}{\tau_{o,1}}\sin\frac{\pi x}{L} = -D_a a_{o,1}e^{-\frac{t}{\tau_{o,1}}}\left(\frac{\pi}{L}\right)^2\sin\frac{\pi x}{L} \quad (6.23)$$

and hence

$$\tau_{o,1} = \frac{L^2}{\pi^2 D_a}. \quad (6.24)$$

For the other modes m we similarly obtain

$$\tau_{o,m} = \frac{L^2}{m^2 \pi^2 D_a}. \quad (6.25)$$

The lifetime of various modes $\tau_{e,l}$ and $\tau_{o,m}$ shows that the higher modes are attenuated faster. Therefore, if there is a wild density profile at the beginning (in time $t = 0$), then the profile is being simplified with time.

The question is whether it is possible to achieve the stationarity in the presence of diffusion. It is not if the continuity equation holds. It is possible in presence of the source term,

$$\nabla \cdot n\mathbf{u} = Q. \quad (6.26)$$

In case of the collisional ionisation $Q = Zn$, where Z is the ionisation function, we have

$$\nabla \cdot n\mathbf{u} = -D_a \Delta n = Zn \quad \rightarrow \quad \Delta n = -\frac{Z}{D_a}n, \quad (6.27)$$

solution to which is again the series of harmonic functions.

The recombination on the other hand takes a different form, because it does change the number of charged particles.

$$\frac{\partial n}{\partial t} = -\alpha n^2, \quad (6.28)$$

where n^2 dependence is the consequence of the recombination being proportional to both the density of electrons and ions and the use of plasma approximation. Then

$$\frac{1}{n^2}dn = -\alpha dt \quad \rightarrow \quad -\frac{1}{n} = -\frac{1}{n_0} - \alpha t. \quad (6.29)$$

For $t \rightarrow \infty$ we have $n \sim \frac{1}{\alpha t}$, which says that due to the recombination in plasmas, the density of the charged particles drops as $1/t$. The spatial part of the continuity equation is not relevant to the problem, thus we neglect it from the solution.

This solution is important for understanding which process drives the diffusion of charged particles in a of left-alone cloud of plasma in time. Obviously, in initial moment, the recombination will be the dominant process, as its time dependence is steeper for small t . Contrary, when the density of the plasma of gets smaller, the diffusion with a exponential time dependence prevails and further drives the diffusion.

6.2 Diffusion in highly ionised plasmas

We will show that in highly ionised plasmas, the diffusion resembles the process of recombination rather than ambipolar diffusion. Let's take the fluid approximation to deal with the problem.

$$\rho \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} = \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B} - \nabla p \quad (6.30)$$

$$\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B} = \eta \mathbf{j} \quad (6.31)$$

Note that generally the specific resistivity of plasma η is not a scalar value but rather a tensor and thus may depend on direction. In plasma, it usually is the case. When assuming the stationarity, by vector-multiplying (6.31) by \mathbf{B} and using (6.30) we have

$$\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B} + (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) \times \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B} - B^2 \mathbf{u} + B^2 \mathbf{u}_{\parallel} = \eta_{\perp} \nabla p. \quad (6.32)$$

Since $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}_{\parallel} + \mathbf{u}_{\perp}$, then the two last terms on the left-hand side give together $B^2 \mathbf{u}_{\perp}$ and thus

$$\mathbf{u}_{\perp} = \frac{\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}}{B^2} - \frac{\eta_{\perp} \nabla p}{B^2}. \quad (6.33)$$

The first term on the right-hand side is the same for both (electron and ion) fluids. The second one on the other hand may drive the diffusion. Let's study the particle flux triggered by this term. The perpendicular particle flux is

$$\mathbf{\Gamma}_{\perp} = n \mathbf{u}'_{\perp} = -\frac{\eta_{\perp} n (K_B T_e + K_B T_i)}{B^2} \nabla n = D_{\perp} \nabla n. \quad (6.34)$$

Note that the diffusion coefficient is a function of particle density and may be for simpler further computations decomposed as

$$D_{\perp} = 2An \quad (6.35)$$

The factor of two is introduced so that $\nabla \cdot (2An \nabla n) = 2A \nabla \cdot (n \nabla n) = A \Delta n^2$.

Then the continuity equation

$$\frac{\partial n}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (n \mathbf{u}) = 0 \quad (6.36)$$

transforms to

$$\frac{\partial n}{\partial t} = A \Delta n^2. \quad (6.37)$$

Such equation may be solved by separation of variables, hence $n(\mathbf{r}, t) = T(t)S(\mathbf{r})$. Then $S \frac{dT}{dt} = AT^2 \Delta S^2$ and

$$\frac{1}{T^2} \frac{dT}{dt} = \frac{A}{S} \Delta S^2 = \text{const} = -\frac{1}{\tau^2} \quad (6.38)$$

and in the case we solved previously. Then the temporal part has a solution

$$\frac{1}{T} = \frac{t}{\tau^2} + \frac{1}{T_0} \quad (6.39)$$

and the form of τ depends on the spatial part S . For $t \rightarrow \infty$

$$T \propto \frac{\tau^2}{t}, \quad (6.40)$$

which reminds the solution of the change of the particle density caused by recombinations. The difference between the ambipolar diffusion and the result we just obtained is in the diffusion coefficient depending on particle density. Note that the result we obtained is not consistent with the assumptions of the derivation of the Fick's law, as we allow for non-stationarity here.

6.3 Diffusion in the magnetic field

In presence of the magnetic field, the Euler equation retains an additional term. Let us see what happens in the presence of the magnetic field. We must go back to the double-fluid approximation, since collisions are essential in the process of diffusion.

$$mn \left[\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u} \right] = \text{sgn } q en(\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B}) - K_B T \nabla n - mn\nu \mathbf{u} \quad (6.41)$$

Let's assume that the collisions are much faster than the overall evolution of the system in time, or in another words $\frac{d}{dt} \ll \omega_c, \nu$, where ν is the collision frequency. Then the left-hand side may be neglected. Thus in components in the Cartesian system with z axis oriented along the magnetic field ($\mathbf{B} = B\mathbf{e}_z$) we have

$$mn\nu u_x = \text{sgn } q enE_x - K_B T \frac{\partial n}{\partial x} + \text{sgn } q enu_y B, \quad (6.42)$$

$$mn\nu u_y = \text{sgn } q enE_y - K_B T \frac{\partial n}{\partial y} - \text{sgn } q enu_x B. \quad (6.43)$$

Along the magnetic field a classic diffusion as derived above occurs.

By introducing $\mu = \frac{e}{m\nu}$, $D = \frac{K_B T}{m\nu} = \frac{\omega_c}{\nu} \frac{K_B T}{eB}$ we have

$$u_x = \text{sgn } q \mu E_x - \frac{D}{n} \frac{\partial n}{\partial x} + \text{sgn } q \frac{\omega_c}{\nu} u_y, \quad (6.44)$$

$$u_y = \text{sgn } q \mu E_y - \frac{D}{n} \frac{\partial n}{\partial y} - \text{sgn } q \frac{\omega_c}{\nu} u_x, \quad (6.45)$$

and

$$u_x(1 + \omega_c^2 \tau^2) = \text{sgn } q \mu E_x - \frac{D}{n} \frac{\partial n}{\partial x} + \omega_c^2 \tau^2 \frac{E_y}{B} - \text{sgn } q \omega_c^2 \tau^2 \frac{K_B T}{neB} \frac{\partial n}{\partial y}, \quad (6.46)$$

$$u_y(1 + \omega_c^2 \tau^2) = \text{sgn } q \mu E_y - \frac{D}{n} \frac{\partial n}{\partial y} - \omega_c^2 \tau^2 \frac{E_x}{B} + \text{sgn } q \omega_c^2 \tau^2 \frac{K_B T}{neB} \frac{\partial n}{\partial x}. \quad (6.47)$$

The last two terms on the right-hand side obviously indicate the already known E-B and diamagnetic drifts. Hence

$$\mathbf{u}_\perp = \frac{\mathbf{v}_E + \mathbf{v}_D}{1 + 1/(\omega_c^2 \tau^2)} + \text{sgn } q \frac{\mu}{1 + \omega_c^2 \tau^2} \mathbf{E} - \frac{D}{1 + \omega_c^2 \tau^2} \frac{\nabla n}{n}, \quad (6.48)$$

where $\mathbf{v}_E = \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}/B^2$ and $\mathbf{v}_D = -\nabla p \times \mathbf{B}/(qnB^2)$. Hence the generalised Fick's law transforms to

$$\mathbf{u}_\perp = \text{sgn } q \mu_\perp \mathbf{E} - D_\perp \frac{\nabla n}{n} + \frac{\mathbf{v}_E + \mathbf{v}_D}{1 + 1/(\omega_c^2 \tau^2)}. \quad (6.49)$$

The last term represents the already familiar drifts in the plasma fluid, only with the correction term for the diffusion. Obviously, the correcting term is important for $\nu > \omega_c$ hence in the weak field regime.

The other correcting terms have reciprocal signs, hence in the strong field the diffusion is suppressed. For $\omega_c^2 \tau^2 \gg 1$ we have

$$D_\perp \propto \frac{K_B T \nu}{m \omega_c^2} \quad \text{and} \quad D_\parallel = \frac{K_B T}{m \nu}, \quad (6.50)$$

hence the decay caused by diffusion in plasmas have different rates in different directions. In case the collisional frequency is proportional to $m^{-1/2}$ (and when $T \propto m \nu^2 \propto m \nu^2$) then the diffusion depends also on the species of the particles. Then

$$D_\perp \propto m^{1/2} \quad \text{and} \quad D_\parallel \propto m^{-1/2}. \quad (6.51)$$

In the perpendicular direction the diffusion is faster for ions than electrons, while in the parallel direction the electrons diffuse faster. It has to be noted than generally speaking, the collisions are important for the particles to be able to penetrate across the magnetic field.

Chapter 7

Equilibrium and stability

7.1 Equilibrium

The state of equilibrium indicates the forces acting on plasma are in balance. In the investigation of the possible equilibrium of plasma we will use the fluid approximation. However, it should be noted that this approximation might be too rough. In plasmas, the drifting motions are usually the sources of instabilities driving the plasma from equilibrium, and the drifting motions are largely not captured by the fluid approximation.

In investigating the stability, we assume that the forces are in balance, hence the solution is stationary. Hence the necessary condition of equilibrium is $\frac{\partial \bullet}{\partial t} \rightarrow 0$.

We recognise a *stable equilibrium*, where small perturbations deviating the system from an exact balance are attenuated, and an *unstable equilibrium*, when even a small perturbation of the system grows and brings the system out of equilibrium. The equilibrium generally is a non-linear problem. We will limit ourselves to discuss the linear problems only by considering the small perturbations. To describe the equilibrium, the MHD description suffices, however it is usually not sufficient to discuss the stability of such equilibrium. Let us remind that the *mechanical stability* equals to the work that is needed to bring the object from the stable equilibrium position to another (investigated) equilibrium position. Should this work be negative, the position at which it is located is not stable.

Let us describe a general concept of investigation of equilibrium on an example of *hydromagnetic equilibrium*. Let's consider a plasma cylinder, where the magnetic field aligns along the cylinder axis. The simplified equation of motion reads

$$\rho \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} = \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B} - \nabla p. \quad (7.1)$$

We search for a stationary state, hence we set $\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t} = 0$ and the Euler equation degenerates to

$$\nabla p = \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B} \quad (7.2)$$

(Figures of various equilibria)

It is clear now that there is an obvious ballance between the Lorentz force which supports the pressure gradient. Such ballance may be achieved when an azimuthal current flows through plasma cylinder. By taking the vector multiplication by \mathbf{B} we have

$$\mathbf{B} \times \nabla p = \mathbf{B} \times (\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B}) = B^2 \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{j} \mathbf{B} = B^2 (\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{j}_{\parallel}). \quad (7.3)$$

By assuming that $\mathbf{j} = \mathbf{j}_{\parallel} + \mathbf{j}_{\perp}$ we obtain the expression for a required azimuthal current

$$\mathbf{j}_{\perp} = \frac{\mathbf{B} \times \nabla p}{B^2} = (K_B T_i + K_B T_e) \frac{\mathbf{B} \times \nabla n}{B^2}, \quad (7.4)$$

which is an expression for a diamagnetic current. Such situation may be viewed as if a plasma cylinder is to be in an equilibrium, there must be a current induced, which takes a form of a diamagnetic current. One should bear in mind that this expression was derived when neglecting all other terms in the Euler equation.

One should also note that both \mathbf{j} and \mathbf{B} are perpendicular to ∇p , hence both \mathbf{j} and \mathbf{B} lie in the isosurface of constant pressure. The field lines and the current lines may be curved in this surface.

By considering Ampère's law

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mu_0 \mathbf{j} \quad (7.5)$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla p &= \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{B} = \frac{1}{\mu_0} (\nabla \times \mathbf{B}) \times \mathbf{B} = \\ &= \frac{1}{\mu_0} [-(\nabla \mathbf{B}) \cdot \mathbf{B} + (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B}] = \frac{1}{\mu_0} \left[(\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B} - \frac{1}{2} \nabla B^2 \right] \end{aligned} \quad (7.6)$$

By rearranging we have

$$\nabla \left(p + \frac{1}{\mu_0} B^2 / 2 \right) = \frac{1}{\mu_0} (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B}. \quad (7.7)$$

The right-hand side indicates the action of forces along field lines, the *magnetic tension*. If we assume that there are negligible changes of the magnetic field along the field lines, the right-hand side vanishes. Then

$$p + \frac{B^2}{2\mu_0} = \text{const.} \quad (7.8)$$

The second term has a physical meaning of the *magnetic field pressure*. By comparing the two terms we define the *plasma beta*,

$$\beta \equiv \frac{p}{p_{\text{mag}}} = \frac{n \sum_a K_B T_a}{\frac{B^2}{2\mu_0}}, \quad (7.9)$$

where a identifies the particles by type.

For $\beta > 1$ the gas pressure prevails. This high-beta regime is common to interior of stars and most of the laboratory experiments. For $\beta < 1$ the magnetic field pressure prevails. This low-beta regime is common to solar/stellar atmosphere(s) and also to interstellar matter.

7.1.1 Diffusion of the magnetic field into plasmas

Let us discuss the system of two limited half-spaces, one of them filled with plasmas only, and the other one containing the magnetic field in a vacuum. In case there is no resistivity in plasmas, the two regions will remain disconnected. The electromotoric force induced by any possible motion of the field would drive an infinite electric current on the boundary separating these two regions, but the field would never penetrate the plasma. However, the shape of the boundary may change significantly. If a pressure balance (7.8) is to hold, then it must be that if we somehow *force* the magnetic field to penetrate the plasma region, the gas must leave such a region.

Since (7.8) holds, automatically $\beta = 1$ on the boundary. For the “plasma half-space” the second term vanishes and vice versa for the “magnetic field half-space”. However, by considering the finite resistivity of the plasma we practically allow the two distinct “fluids” to mix. In the following, we want to estimate the time scale of this process. Let us start from a Faraday’s law of induction, Ampère’s law, and a generalised Ohm’s law:

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} \quad (7.10)$$

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{B} = \mu_0 \mathbf{j} \quad (7.11)$$

$$\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{B} = \eta \mathbf{j} \quad (7.12)$$

Let us assume that the plasma is stationary, hence $\mathbf{u} = 0$ and thus the second term on the left-hand side of the Ohm’s law vanishes. Note that even when we assume no bulk motion of the plasma, there still might flow electric currents through plasma, as we have two distinct charged species in the plasma. Remind that the velocity of the bulk motion is defined as

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{1}{\rho} (n_i M \mathbf{u}_i + n_e m \mathbf{u}_e) \sim \frac{M \mathbf{u}_i + m \mathbf{u}_e}{M + m}, \quad (7.13)$$

hence as a weighted mean of the velocities of the two species, while the current is defined as a *difference* of the velocities of the two species:

$$\mathbf{j} = e(n_i \mathbf{u}_i - n_e \mathbf{u}_e) \sim ne(\mathbf{u}_i - \mathbf{u}_e). \quad (7.14)$$

By combining equations (7.10), (7.11), and (7.12) we have

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = -\nabla \times \eta \mathbf{j} = -\frac{\eta}{\mu_0} [\nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}) - \Delta \mathbf{B}] = \frac{\eta}{\mu_0} \Delta \mathbf{B}, \quad (7.15)$$

where we used $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$.

Such equation may be solved using the separation of variables. For simplicity, we approximate the ∇ operator by division over the *length-scale* L . Then we solve the equation

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} = \frac{\eta}{\mu_0 L^2} \mathbf{B}, \quad (7.16)$$

which has an solution in a form of exponential

$$\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B}_0 \exp \left[\pm \frac{t}{\tau} \right], \quad (7.17)$$

from which we take only the negative solution as physical, since we solve for a dissipation of the magnetic field into plasma.

$$\tau = \frac{\mu_0 L^2}{\eta} \quad (7.18)$$

is a characteristic time-scale of the penetration of the magnetic field into plasma.

The solution might be also understood as the magnetic field dissipating due to the induction of the electric currents in plasma, which dissipate via the Ohmic heating. Let us estimate how much of the energy of the magnetic field dissipates due to the Ohmic heating processes.

The loss output of the Ohmic heating is given by

$$P = \eta j^2. \quad (7.19)$$

Hence the energy drained from the magnetic field over the time τ is

$$\Delta W = \eta j^2 \tau. \quad (7.20)$$

The electric current is given by the Ampère's law (7.11). Hence the energy loss (again, when approximating the ∇ operator) we have

$$\Delta W = \eta j^2 \tau = \eta \left(\frac{B}{\mu_0 L} \right)^2 \frac{\mu_0 L^2}{\eta} = \frac{B^2}{\mu_0}. \quad (7.21)$$

It turned out that all the total energy of the magnetic field dissipates and heats up the plasma. Actually it is by factor two larger, which is due to our rough estimates.

7.2 Instabilities

The systems out of the thermodynamical equilibrium contain some of the free energy, which may drive the rise of random fluctuations. In this case, for instance the self-excitation of plasma waves is possible. There is no other mean to self-excite plasma waves. Of course, they might be driven from the outside. In this case, we speak about the unstable equilibrium.

We recognise basically four types of plasma instabilities and in the further sections we will study some of the examples.

Stream instabilities A stream of plasma or and electric current propagates through plasma. A spectrum of waves is excited that lead to an instability of the system.

Rayleigh-Taylor instability Should there be a sharp density gradient in plasmas or the plasma be confined *and* there is an external force (for instance, gravity), the external force drives the growth of instabilities. A classical example of non-plasmatic Rayleigh-Taylor instability is a glass of water turned upside down, when the atmospheric pressure supports the water in the glass. The system is allowed to be in an unstable equilibrium, however once perturbed, the instability grows.

Universal instability Is called universal because it is always present in the confined plasmas (and the plasmas are always confined somehow). The confined plasma is not in the total thermodynamical ballance even when there are no important external forces. The pressure (expanding the plasma) drives the instabilities.

Kinetic instability The kinetic instability is driven by the non-equilibrium distribution function (usually non-Maxwellian). An anisotropy in the distribution function may drive the instabilities.

7.2.1 Two-stream instability

Let us study first one example of stream instabilities, the two-stream instability. Let us assume a homogeneous plasma in the coordinate system, where ions are stationary. Let us allow electrons to have a systematical speed \mathbf{u}_0 with respect to the ion background. We assume $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_0 = 0$. The plasma is cold ($T_i = T_e = 0$) and there is no magnetic field (hence $\mathbf{B}_0 = 0$).

Then the linearised Euler equations read:

$$Mn_0 \frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_{i1}}{\partial t} = en_0 \mathbf{E}_1, \quad (7.22)$$

$$mn_0 \left[\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_{e1}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u}_0 \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}_{e1} \right] = -en_0 \mathbf{E}_1. \quad (7.23)$$

We search for electrostatic waves propagating in the x direction, where $\mathbf{E}_1 \parallel \mathbf{e}_x \parallel \mathbf{k} \parallel \mathbf{u}_0$. Let us use the approach of solving the equations in the Fourier space (using the Fourier transform (5.10)) similarly to the problem of deriving the dispersion relation of plasma waves. Hence

$$-i\omega M u_{i1} = e E_1, \quad (7.24)$$

$$m(-i\omega + i k u_0) u_{e1} = -e E_1. \quad (7.25)$$

The continuity equation for ions reads (with assumptions applied: $\nabla n_0 = 0$ and $\mathbf{u}_{i0} \equiv 0$)

$$\frac{\partial n_{i1}}{\partial t} + n_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{i1} = 0, \quad (7.26)$$

where we again consider only the x -component of the differential operator. We express n_{i1} and further use (7.24) to get

$$n_{i1} = \frac{k}{\omega} n_0 u_{i1} = \frac{i e n_0 k}{M \omega^2} E_1. \quad (7.27)$$

Similarly, the continuity equation for electrons reads

$$\frac{\partial n_{e1}}{\partial t} + n_0 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{e1} + (\mathbf{u}_0 \cdot \nabla) n_{e1} = 0, \quad (7.28)$$

hence the parallel component in the Fourier space is

$$(-i\omega + iku_0)n_{e1} + ikn_0 u_{e1} = 0, \quad (7.29)$$

from which we express n_{e1} by using (7.25):

$$n_{e1} = \frac{kn_0 u_{e1}}{\omega - ku_0} = -\frac{iek n_0}{m(\omega - ku_0)^2} E_1. \quad (7.30)$$

We do not assume the plasma approximation to be valid in this case, thus we further use Poisson equation to finally derive the dispersion relation

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E}_1 = \frac{e}{\varepsilon_0} (n_{i1} - n_{e1}), \quad (7.31)$$

where the density perturbations of the two species are given by (7.27) and (7.30). Then

$$ikE_1 = \frac{e}{\varepsilon_0} iek n_0 \left[\frac{1}{M\omega^2} + \frac{1}{m(\omega - ku_0)^2} \right] E_1 \quad (7.32)$$

and thus

$$1 = \frac{e^2 n_0}{\varepsilon_0 m} \left[\frac{m/M}{\omega^2} + \frac{1}{(\omega - ku_0)^2} \right] = \omega_p^2 \left[\frac{m/M}{\omega^2} + \frac{1}{(\omega - ku_0)^2} \right]. \quad (7.33)$$

This is the dispersion relation of the two-stream instability. Please note that for $u_0 = 0$ and $m/M \rightarrow 0$ this relation degenerates to $\omega^2 = \omega_p^2$, hence to normal plasma oscillations.

This is the equation of the fourth order in ω . The equation may either have four real roots, each of them will correspond to the individual oscillatory mode, hence it will not describe an instability. The other option is that the equation will have two real roots and the remaining two will be complex, one conjugated to the other. Let us discuss these two. They might be symbolically written as

$$\omega_j = \alpha_j + i\gamma_j, \quad \text{where } \alpha_j = \Re[\omega_j] \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma_j = \Im[\omega_j]. \quad (7.34)$$

In the case of the complex roots, the solution for e.g. the electric field reads

$$E_1 = E \mathbf{e}_x \exp[i(kx - \omega t)] e^{\gamma_j t}. \quad (7.35)$$

Since the two complex roots are complex conjugates, one of them will have $\gamma_j > 0$ and at least one of the modes will depict an exponential growth.

To study the dispersion relation at least qualitatively, we introduce new variables $\xi = \omega/\omega_p$ and $\xi_0 = ku_0/\omega_p$. Then the dispersion relation reads

$$1 = \frac{m/M}{\xi^2} + \frac{1}{(\xi - \xi_0)^2} = F(\xi; \xi_0). \quad (7.36)$$

(figure here)

Figure 7.1: Two-stream instability

We draw $F(\xi; \xi_0)$ as a function of ξ for the given ξ_0 . Two possible plots are displayed in Fig. 7.1.

It turns out that for small ξ_0 the plasma is unstable (function $F(\xi; \xi_0)$ has two conjugated complex roots). In another words, for a given u_0 , the plasma is unstable with respect to perturbations with small k (and hence large wavelength). In this case an internal inconsistency appears. The linearisation approach to solve the system of initial equations will no longer be valid, the assumptions of small perturbations will break. Our solution is therefore no longer correct. We just derived that such solution qualitatively is unstable (that is a correct result), however quantitatively (deriving the exponential growth) is not correct.

7.2.2 Gravitational instability

Let us consider another example: the space is divided into two half-spaces, one empty and one occupied by plasma. The Cartesian coordinate system is set so that the \mathbf{e}_x is normal to the boundary between the two half-spaces and \mathbf{e}_y and \mathbf{e}_z lie within the boundary, perpendicular to each other. The background magnetic field is parallel to axis z . The plasma has the density gradient parallel to axis x . The plasma is cold and the magnetic field is homogeneous. We allow for a plasma bulk velocity parallel to axis y . Then in the state of equilibrium the Euler equation reads

$$Mn_{i0}[(\mathbf{u}_{i0} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{u}_{i0}] = en_{i0}\mathbf{u}_{i0} \times \mathbf{B}_0 + Mn_{i0}\mathbf{g}. \quad (7.37)$$

Note that we added an *ad hoc* term of the gravity force. For \mathbf{g} constant also \mathbf{u}_{i0} is constant and hence $(\mathbf{u}_{i0} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{u}_{i0} \rightarrow 0$. Then

$$0 = en_{i0}\mathbf{u}_{i0} \times \mathbf{B}_0 + Mn_{i0}\mathbf{g} \quad (7.38)$$

We multiply (7.38) by \mathbf{B}_0 to obtain

$$0 = e\mathbf{B}_0 \times (\mathbf{u}_{i0} \times \mathbf{B}_0) + M\mathbf{B}_0 \times \mathbf{g} = eB_0^2\mathbf{u}_{i0} - e\mathbf{B}_0 \cdot \mathbf{u}_{i0}\mathbf{B}_0 + M\mathbf{B}_0 \times \mathbf{g} \quad (7.39)$$

and hence

$$\mathbf{u}_{i0} = -\frac{M}{e} \frac{\mathbf{B}_0 \times \mathbf{g}}{B_0^2} = -\frac{g}{\Omega_c} \mathbf{e}_y, \quad (7.40)$$

where \mathbf{u}_{i0} is the velocity of the ion drift in the field of gravity. The drift of electrons is negligible, since they have m/M -times smaller effect. Regarding the other drifts, there is no E-B drift, since $\mathbf{E}_0 = 0$, there is also no diamagnetic drift, because we assumed the cold plasma. However, the conclusions might be different, when the boundary is perturbed and corrugated (see Fig. 7.2). Then the following effects occur:

1. The ions drift and will cause the accumulation of the charge. The electrons react with some delay.

(figure here)

Figure 7.2: The origin of the gravitational instability

2. The accumulated charges cause the additional electric field \mathbf{E}_1 .
3. Now the E-B drift appears with drift velocity pointing parallel to the normal direction to the boundary.

Let us search for the increment of the growth. Let us assume that there is a wave propagating parallel to \mathbf{e}_y . For ions we introduce the perturbations to the density and velocity, similarly as we did in the case of the plasma waves. The the Euler equation reads:

$$M(n_{i0} + n_{i1}) \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\mathbf{u}_{i0} + \mathbf{u}_{i1}) + [(\mathbf{u}_{i0} + \mathbf{u}_{i1}) \cdot \nabla] (\mathbf{u}_{i0} + \mathbf{u}_{i1}) \right\} = e(n_{i0} + n_{i1}) [\mathbf{E}_1 + (\mathbf{u}_{i0} + \mathbf{u}_{i1}) \times \mathbf{B}_0] + M(n_{i0} + n_{i1}) \mathbf{g} \quad (7.41)$$

We further proceed slightly differently from the procedure we took when studying the waves. We append (7.41) with (7.37) multiplied by $1 + n_{i1}/n_{i0}$ to obtain the system of two equations:

$$M(n_{i0} + n_{i1}) \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\mathbf{u}_{i0} + \mathbf{u}_{i1}) + (\mathbf{u}_{i0} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}_{i0} + (\mathbf{u}_{i0} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}_{i1} + (\mathbf{u}_{i1} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}_{i0} \right\} = e(n_{i0} + n_{i1}) [\mathbf{E}_1 + (\mathbf{u}_{i0} + \mathbf{u}_{i1}) \times \mathbf{B}_0] + M(n_{i0} + n_{i1}) \mathbf{g} \quad (7.42)$$

$$M(n_{i0} + n_{i1}) (\mathbf{u}_{i0} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}_{i0} = (n_{i0} + n_{i1}) e \mathbf{u}_{i0} \times \mathbf{B}_0 + M(n_{i0} + n_{i1}) \mathbf{g}. \quad (7.43)$$

By subtracting the two some of the terms cancel, and when we further use $\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_{i0}}{\partial t} = 0$ and $(\mathbf{u}_{i1} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}_{i0} = 0$ we have to the first order

$$M n_{i0} \left[\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}_{i1}}{\partial t} + (\mathbf{u}_{i0} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u}_{i1} \right] = e n_{i0} (\mathbf{E}_1 + \mathbf{u}_{i1} \times \mathbf{B}_0). \quad (7.44)$$

It seems that apparently the term with the gravity acceleration disappeared. An explicit term containing \mathbf{g} indeed disappeared, however we have to keep in mind that the gravity acceleration is still hidden in \mathbf{u}_{i0} !

Equation (7.44) in the Fourier space transforms to

$$M(\omega - \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{u}_{i0}) \mathbf{u}_{i1} = i e (\mathbf{E}_1 + \mathbf{u}_{i1} \times \mathbf{B}_0). \quad (7.45)$$

Let us write this equation in components by assuming $E_{1x} = 0$, since we search for wave propagating in the y -direction. We further use $\mathbf{k} = k \mathbf{e}_x$ and $\mathbf{u}_{i0} = u_{i0} \mathbf{e}_x$. For ions we have

$$u_{i1x} = \frac{-ie}{M(\omega - k u_{i0})} u_{i1y} B_0, \quad (7.46)$$

$$u_{i1y} = \frac{-ie}{M(\omega - k u_{i0})} (E_{1y} - u_{i1x} B_0). \quad (7.47)$$

By combining the two we obtain for u_{iy}

$$u_{i1y} = \frac{-ie}{M(\omega - ku_{i0})} \left(E_{1y} + \frac{-ieB_0^2}{M(\omega - ku_{i0})} u_{i1y} \right) \quad (7.48)$$

and hence

$$u_{i1y} = \frac{-ieE_{1y}}{M(\omega - ku_{i0})} \left[1 - \frac{e^2 B_0^2 / M^2}{(\omega - ku_{i0})^2} \right]^{-1} = \frac{-ieE_{1y}}{M(\omega - ku_{i0})} \left[1 - \frac{\Omega_c^2}{(\omega - ku_{i0})^2} \right]^{-1}. \quad (7.49)$$

To obtain a relation for u_{i1x} we simply insert (7.49) into (7.46) and have

$$u_{i1x} = -\frac{e\Omega_c E_{1y}}{M(\omega - ku_{i0})^2} \left[1 - \frac{\Omega_c^2}{(\omega - ku_{i0})^2} \right]^{-1}. \quad (7.50)$$

By further assuming low-frequency waves, hence using approximation $\Omega_c^2 \gg (\omega - ku_{i0})^2$, we have

$$u_{i1x} = \frac{E_{1y}}{B_0}, \quad u_{i1y} = -i \frac{\omega - ku_{i0}}{\Omega_c} \frac{E_{1y}}{B_0} \quad (7.51)$$

and analogously for electrons

$$u_{e1x} = \frac{E_{1y}}{B_0}, \quad u_{e1y} = -i \frac{\omega - ku_{e0}}{\omega_c} \frac{E_{1y}}{B_0}, \quad (7.52)$$

where $\omega_c \gg \Omega_c$ and thus $u_{e1y} \rightarrow 0$.

The continuity equation for ions is

$$\frac{\partial n_{i1}}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (n_{i0} \mathbf{u}_{i0}) + (\mathbf{u}_{i0} \cdot \nabla) n_{i1} + n_{i1} \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{i0} + (\mathbf{u}_{i1} \cdot \nabla) n_{i0} + n_{i0} \nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{i1} + \nabla \cdot (n_{i1} \mathbf{u}_{i1}) = 0. \quad (7.53)$$

The second term vanishes, because by assumptions $\nabla n_{i0} \perp \mathbf{u}_{i0}$, forth term vanishes because we assumed that $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}_{i0} = 0$ and the last term on the left-hand side also vanishes, because it is the second order term. Hence in the Fourier space we have

$$-i\omega n_{i1} + iku_{i0} n_{i1} + u_{i1x} \frac{\partial n_{i0}}{\partial x} + ikn_{i0} u_{i1y} = 0. \quad (7.54)$$

Similarly we construct the continuity equation for electrons, however it is simpler, because we assumed that $u_{e0} \ll u_{i0}$ and we showed that $u_{e1y} \rightarrow 0$. We will also expect the low-frequency waves, hence the use of plasma approximation $n_1 = n_{e1} = n_{i1}$ and $n_0 = n_{e0} = n_{i0}$ is justified. In the end, we should show the consistency of the results with the assumptions. Thus for electrons we have

$$-i\omega n_1 + u_{e1x} \frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x} = 0. \quad (7.55)$$

By combining (7.54) and (7.51) we have

$$-i\omega n_1 + iku_{i0} n_1 + \frac{E_{1y}}{B_0} \frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x} - i^2 kn_0 \frac{\omega - ku_{i0}}{\Omega_c} \frac{E_{1y}}{B_0} = 0, \quad (7.56)$$

which trivially turns into

$$(\omega - ku_{i0})n_1 + i\frac{E_{1y}}{B_0}\frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x} + ikn_0\frac{\omega - ku_{i0}}{\Omega_c}\frac{E_{1y}}{B_0} = 0. \quad (7.57)$$

Similarly we combine (7.55) and (7.52) to get the equivalent of (7.57):

$$-i\omega n_1 + \frac{E_{1y}}{B_0}\frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x} = 0, \quad (7.58)$$

which allows us to express the term E_{1y}/B_0 and insert it into (7.57). Then

$$(\omega - ku_{i0})n_1 - \frac{\omega n_1}{\frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x}}\frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x} - kn_0\frac{\omega - ku_{i0}}{\Omega_c}\frac{\omega n_1}{\frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x}} = 0. \quad (7.59)$$

After some algebra we obtain

$$\omega(\omega - ku_{i0}) = -\frac{u_{i0}\Omega_c}{n_0}\frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x}. \quad (7.60)$$

Now we use (7.40) and have

$$\omega(\omega - ku_{i0}) = \frac{g}{n_0}\frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x}, \quad (7.61)$$

or

$$\omega^2 - ku_{i0}\omega - g\left(\frac{\frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x}}{n_0}\right) = 0. \quad (7.62)$$

This is the dispersion relation of the wave we searched for. The solution is

$$\omega = \frac{1}{2}ku_{i0} \pm \left[\frac{1}{4}k^2u_{i0}^2 + g\left(\frac{\frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x}}{n_0}\right) \right]^{\frac{1}{2}}. \quad (7.63)$$

We will have instability (and exponential growth) in case ω is complex. That will be fulfilled for

$$-g\left(\frac{\frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x}}{n_0}\right) > \frac{1}{4}k^2u_{i0}^2, \quad (7.64)$$

thus g and ∇n_0 must have opposite signs. By waving the hands, “the lighter fluid supports the heavier one”. Similar situation we had in case of the glass of water turned upside down.

Similar instability appears in the column of plasma, when the gravity force is replaced by the action of the centrifugal force. The conclusions are the same. The boundary of the plasma column is then corrugated and the instability is termed *flute instability*. The onset of this instability is observed in the experiments of the laser-induced fusion. The idea of the laser-induced fusion is that the fusion begins faster than the flute instability sets on and desintegrates the plasma confinement.

(figure here)

Figure 7.3: Universal instability

7.2.3 Universal instability

We will proceed similarly to the previous section, however, the $\mathbf{g} \times \mathbf{B}$ drift will be replaced by the diamagnetic drift. Since in this drift there is no scaling with mass of the particles, we have to solve equations for both ions and electrons.

For the background velocities we have relations:

$$\mathbf{u}_{i0} = \mathbf{u}_{Di} = \frac{K_B T_i}{e B_0} \frac{1}{n_0} \frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x} \mathbf{e}_y \quad (7.65)$$

$$\mathbf{u}_{e0} = \mathbf{u}_{De} = -\frac{K_B T_e}{e B_0} \frac{1}{n_0} \frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x} \mathbf{e}_y, \quad (7.66)$$

We expect the non-zero component k_z of the wavevector, the motion of electrons along the background magnetic field is important to shield the electrostatic field induced by ions. We will further assume that the Boltzmann relation (4.87) fully describes the density perturbation of the electrons.

$$\frac{n_{e1}}{n_0} = \frac{e \phi_1}{K_B T_e}. \quad (7.67)$$

The geometry of the problem is sketched in Fig. 7.3.

At point A, the density is larger than in equilibrium, which is denoted by the solid line, hence $n_{e1} > 0$ and thus $\phi_1 > 0$. At point B, the density is smaller than in equilibrium, hence $n_{e1} < 0$ and $\phi_1 < 0$. Thus between points A and B there must be an electric fields \mathbf{E}_1 , which drives the E-B drift with the drift velocity

$$\mathbf{u}_1 = \frac{\mathbf{E}_1 \times \mathbf{B}_0}{B_0^2}. \quad (7.68)$$

There will be a wave in direction \mathbf{e}_y , hence both n_{e1} and ϕ_1 oscillate in time. Therefore also \mathbf{u}_{e1} oscillates in time and in fact the oscillations in the drift velocity are the cause for the oscillations of density. As a result, there will be a motion of the plasma fluid in x direction. Let us support this physical scenario by some equations. The Fourier image of (7.68) is

$$u_{1x} = \frac{E_y}{B_0} = -\frac{i k_y \phi_1}{B_0}, \quad (7.69)$$

where we used the Poisson equation $\mathbf{E}_1 = -\nabla \phi_1 = -i \mathbf{k} \phi_1$. The speed of the drift is the same for both ions and electrons. Let us further assume for simplicity, that the fluid of plasmas is incompressible and oscillates only in the x direction. Mathematically speaking: $u_{1x} \neq u_{1x}(x)$ and $k_z \ll k_y$. Then the continuity equation for divergence centres reads:

$$\frac{\partial n_1}{\partial t} = -u_{1x} \frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x}, \quad (7.70)$$

other components are being neglected. We express (7.70) in the Fourier space and use Boltzmann relation to handle n_1 for electrons and (7.69) to handle u_{1x} . We have:

$$-i\omega n_{e1} = -u_{e1x} \frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x} = \frac{ik_y \phi_1}{B_0} \frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x} = -i\omega n_0 \frac{e\phi_1}{K_B T_e}, \quad (7.71)$$

which solves as

$$\frac{\omega}{k} = -\frac{K_B T_e}{eB_0} \frac{1}{n_0} \frac{\partial n_0}{\partial x}, \quad (7.72)$$

which is exactly the expression (7.66). We confirmed the physical picture sketched in words a few paragraphs above. The perturbation waves propagate with the speed of the diamagnetic drift, hence termed *drift waves*.

However, the dispersion relation shows that not instability occurs, it does not have any term assuring the growth. We did not prove that this configuration is unstable. Let us only comment that the approach we took is not correct enough and that we neglected two important ingredient: the polarisation drift and the drift in the inhomogeneous electric field. The polarisation drift shows up in the case we have a variable electric field. Then an additional drift with a speed of $v_p = \text{sgn} q \frac{1}{\omega_c B} \frac{dE}{dt} t$ needs to be taken into account. We will further only draw a physical picture in words: the corrections by the additional two drifts causes the phase shift between ϕ_1 , which depicts a delay between u_1 and n_1 . Hence, in places, where the plasma is already skewed ($n_1 > 0$), u_1 directs out of the plasma and vice versa. The perturbation on the boundary grows.

7.2.4 Landau damping

The highlight of these lecture notes consists of an example of the kinetic instability. We started this text with an introduction to the statistical physics to describe important properties of the ensemble particles. We will end the text by investigating the oscillatory motions in plasmas, which occur in the case of the particle distribution function not being in equilibrium. We need to leave the fluid approximation and need to go one step deeper, to the single-particle distribution function. Let us remind that for the single-particle distribution function f the Boltzmann equation may be derived,

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial h}{\partial p_i} \frac{\partial f}{\partial r_i} - \frac{\partial h}{\partial r_i} \frac{\partial f}{\partial p_i} = \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} \right)_{\text{coll}}, \quad (7.73)$$

where $h = \frac{p^2}{2m} + V(r)$ is a Hamiltonian of one particle. We showed that this equation may be rewritten as

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla f + \frac{F}{m} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{v}} = \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} \right)_{\text{coll}}, \quad (7.74)$$

where F are the external forces comming from the external potential $V(r)$. By playing explicitly with the term on the right-hand side to extract the term of the self-potential, which has a similar shape as the action of the external potential, we got

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla f + \frac{\langle F \rangle}{m} \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{v}} = \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} \right)'_{\text{coll}}, \quad (7.75)$$

where $\langle F \rangle$ is the averaged action of both external forces and the self potential combined. Then the Vlasov approximation consists of neglecting the right-hand side, which is equivalent of neglecting the mutual correlation of distribution function of different particles. For the further case, we substitute $\langle F \rangle$ by the Lorentz force (as an effect of the sum of both external and internal electric and magnetic fields). Hence finally we have a Vlasov equation to solve:

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla f + \frac{q}{m} (\mathbf{E} + \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{v}} = 0, \quad (7.76)$$

where \mathbf{E} and \mathbf{B} represent the joint action of both external and internal electric and magnetic fields. In the following, we will neglect the external fields and in the case of the magnetic field, we will neglect also the internal one. Altogether, we use the following approximations:

1. $\mathbf{B} = 0$,
2. $\mathbf{E}_0 = 0$, but $\mathbf{E}_1 \neq 0$,
3. $f = f_0 + f_1$, $f_0 = f_0(v)$, $f_1 = f_1(t, \mathbf{r}, \mathbf{v})$,
4. all perturbations are expressed by means of the Fourier series as $A_1 = \bar{A}_1 \exp[i(kx - \omega t)]$,
5. and $A_1 \ll A_0$ and $\frac{\partial A_1}{\partial a} \ll \frac{\partial A_0}{\partial a}$. The perturbations are much smaller than the background values and also the derivatives of the perturbations are much smaller than the derivatives of the background.

We solve the problem for electrons. Thus the Vlasov equation (7.76) under the assumptions listed above reduces to

$$-i\omega f_1 + ikf_1 v_x = \frac{e}{m} E_{1x} \frac{\partial f_0}{\partial v_x}, \quad (7.77)$$

hence

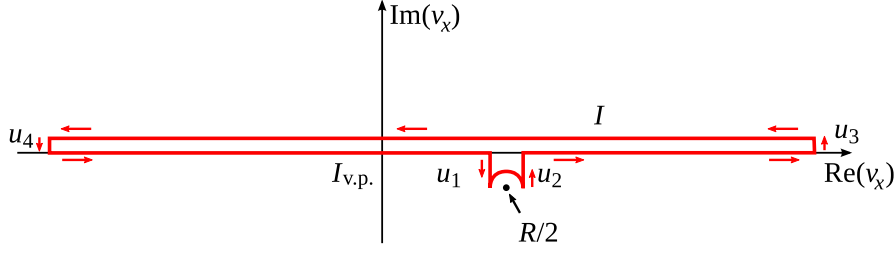
$$f_1 = \frac{ieE_{1x}}{m} \frac{\partial f_0 / \partial v_x}{\omega - kv_x}. \quad (7.78)$$

we add the Poisson equation

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E}_1 = ikE_{1x} = -\frac{en_1}{\varepsilon_0} = -\frac{e}{\varepsilon_0} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f_1 d^3 \mathbf{v}. \quad (7.79)$$

Let us rescale the distribution function so that $f_0 = n_0 \hat{f}_0(\mathbf{v})$, where the normalisation of the newly introduced \hat{f}_0 is $\int \hat{f}_0 d^3 \mathbf{v} = 1$. This definition has an advantage of n_0 , which may be put outside of the integrals, because it is not a function of \mathbf{v} . Let us integrate (7.78) over the whole velocity space

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f_1 d^3 \mathbf{v} = \frac{ieE_{1x}}{m} n_0 \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\partial \hat{f}_0 / \partial v_x}{\omega - kv_x} d^3 \mathbf{v} = -\frac{ikE_{1x}\varepsilon_0}{e}, \quad (7.80)$$

Figure 7.4: A sketch of the integration path bypassing the pole in ω/k .

where we also used (7.79). From that we obtain

$$1 = -\frac{e^2 n_0}{\varepsilon_0 m k} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\partial \hat{f}_0 / \partial v_x}{\omega - k v_x} d^3 \mathbf{v} = -\frac{\omega_p^2}{k^2} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\partial \hat{f}_0 / \partial v_x}{\frac{\omega}{k} - v_x} d^3 \mathbf{v}. \quad (7.81)$$

Let us assume that \hat{f}_0 is a background equilibrium distribution, essentially having the shape of Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution. Then we may decompose \hat{f}_0 as a product of

$$\hat{f}_0(\mathbf{v}) = \tilde{f}_0(v_x) \tilde{f}_0(v_y) \tilde{f}_0(v_z), \quad (7.82)$$

with a normalisation $\int \tilde{f}_0(v) dv = 1$. Then (7.81) simplifies to

$$1 = \frac{\omega_p^2}{k^2} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} dv_x \frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0(v_x) / \partial v_x}{v_x - \frac{\omega}{k}} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} dv_y \tilde{f}_0(v_y) \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} dv_z \tilde{f}_0(v_z) = \frac{\omega_p^2}{k^2} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0 / \partial v_x}{v_x - \frac{\omega}{k}} dv_x. \quad (7.83)$$

We will let ω be complex. The function (7.83) has a pole in ω/k . By using the residuum theorem for the integration of the complex functions, we must integrate along the closed curve, but bypass a pole, which results in an additional contribution of the residuum of this pole. According to the integration path displayed in Fig. 7.4 we have

$$-I + I_{\text{v.p.}} + u_1 + u_2 + \frac{R}{2} + u_3 + u_4 = 0, \quad (7.84)$$

where I is the integral we want to evaluate (note the negative sign as we integrate against the direction of the x axis), $I_{\text{v.p.}}$ is the principal value of this integral, $R = \left[2\pi i \frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0}{\partial v_x} \right]_{\frac{\omega}{k}}$ is a residuum in the pole and the segments u_1 to u_2 may be made infinitesimally small.

(7.83) may thus be written as

$$1 = \frac{\omega_p^2}{k^2} \left\{ \text{v.p.} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0 / \partial v_x}{v_x - \frac{\omega}{k}} dv_x + \left[i\pi \frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0}{\partial v_x} \right]_{\frac{\omega}{k}} \right\}. \quad (7.85)$$

The integral may be solved by parts

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0}{\partial v_x} \frac{dv_x}{v_x - \omega/k} = \left[\frac{\tilde{f}_0}{v_x - \omega/k} \right]_{+\infty}^{-\infty} + \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\tilde{f}_0 dv_x}{(v_x - \omega/k)^2}. \quad (7.86)$$

The first term vanishes due to the fast decay of the distribution function. Note that the phase speed $v_\varphi = \omega/k$ and let v_φ be positive, i.e., we will deal with the positive velocities only. Let's approximate using the Taylor expansion

$$(v_x - v_\varphi)^{-2} \sim v_\varphi^{-2} \left(1 + \frac{2v_x}{v_\varphi} + \frac{3v_x^2}{v_\varphi^2} \right). \quad (7.87)$$

Then (7.86) turns into

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\tilde{f}_0 dv_x}{(v_x - v_\varphi)^2} &\sim v_\varphi^{-2} \left[\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \tilde{f}_0 dv_x + \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{2v_x}{v_\varphi} \tilde{f}_0 dv_x + \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{3v_x^2}{v_\varphi^2} \tilde{f}_0 dv_x \right] = \\ &= v_\varphi^{-2} \left[1 + \frac{2}{v_\varphi} \langle v_x \rangle + \frac{3\langle v_x^2 \rangle}{v_\varphi^2} \right] = v_\varphi^{-2} \left(1 + \frac{3\langle v_x^2 \rangle}{v_\varphi^2} \right), \end{aligned} \quad (7.88)$$

where we used $\langle v_x \rangle = 0$, which certainly is true for the symmetrical velocity distribution, such as the Maxwell-Boltzmann one.

Let's continue to deal with (7.85):

$$1 = \frac{\omega_p^2 k^2}{k^2 \omega^2} \left\{ 1 + \frac{3\langle v_x^2 \rangle}{v_\varphi^2} + i\pi \left[\frac{\omega^2}{k^2} \frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0}{\partial v_x} \right]_{\frac{\omega}{k}} \right\}. \quad (7.89)$$

Let us make a step to the side. If we were to neglect the residuum in the pole, we would neglect the last term. By further using $\frac{1}{2}m\langle v_x^2 \rangle = \frac{1}{2}K_B T_e$ we have

$$1 = \frac{\omega_p^2}{\omega^2} \left(1 + 3 \frac{k^2}{\omega^2} \frac{K_B T_e}{m} \right). \quad (7.90)$$

If we further assume that $\omega \rightarrow \omega_p$ in the second order (in another words $\omega^4 \sim \omega^2 \omega_p^2$) we have

$$\omega^2 = \omega_p^2 + 3k^2 \frac{K_B T_e}{m}, \quad (7.91)$$

which is the dispersion relation for electron electrostatic waves. By neglecting the contribution in the pole we obtained the classical result.

The new physics shows up when we properly treat the residuum in the pole. For simplicity, let's omit the term with the thermal motion, which (as we just showed) results in the electrostatic electron waves. The dispersion relation then reads

$$\omega^2 = \omega_p^2 \left\{ 1 + i\pi \left[\frac{\omega^2}{k^2} \frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0}{\partial v_x} \right]_{\frac{\omega}{k}} \right\}. \quad (7.92)$$

Using the expansion to the Taylor series to the first order we have

$$\omega \sim \omega_p \left\{ 1 + \frac{1}{2} i\pi \left[\frac{\omega^2}{k^2} \frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0}{\partial v_x} \right]_{\frac{\omega}{k}} \right\}, \quad (7.93)$$

which for $\omega \rightarrow \omega_p$ gives

$$\omega \sim \omega_p \left\{ 1 + \frac{1}{2} i\pi \left[\frac{\omega_p^2}{k^2} \frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0}{\partial v_x} \right]_{\frac{\omega}{k}} \right\}. \quad (7.94)$$

This relation has a suitable form of the complex number with separated purely real and purely imaginary parts.

By going back to the definition of the Fourier series $A_1 = \bar{A}_1 \exp[i(kx - \omega t)]$, the new results will come obvious. For $\frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0}{\partial v_x} > 0$ $\Im(\omega) > 0$ and thus we have an instability. For $\frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0}{\partial v_x} < 0$ $\Im(\omega) < 0$ the external perturbations (such as waves) are damped.

So if we plot the distribution function and the perturbation appears at the given phase speed, the derivative of the distribution function decides whether this perturbation will be damped or will grow. Note that for the Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution, $\frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0}{\partial v_x} < 0$ for all speeds, thus in for plasma in a perfect equilibrium the perturbations are always damped. This effects is termed the *Landau damping*.

For a Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution, we may obtain an explicit term of the imaginary part, which is

$$\Im \left(\frac{\omega}{\omega_p} \right) \sim 0.22\sqrt{\pi} \left(\frac{\omega_p}{kv_T} \right)^3 \exp \left[-\frac{1}{2k^2\lambda_D} \right], \quad (7.95)$$

which shows that the waves with wave numbers comparable to the Debye shielding length are the most effectively damped.

A different situation appears when the stream of particles having a different typical speed perturbs the distribution function and creates a bump. Part of this bump will have $\frac{\partial \tilde{f}_0}{\partial v_x} > 0$. If the system is perturbed e.g. by the waves with the phase speeds in the susceptible interval, the instability will occur. The energy exchange between the wave and the particles will occur (see Fig. 7.5). A mixture of two Doppler-shifted maxwellian distributions is unstable.

Landau damping effect play an important role in the heating of the solar corona (and also coronae of Sun-like stars), where the outer layers of the atmosphere (coronae) are much hotter (millions of degrees) than the below located photospheres (thousands of degrees). The heating is therefore due to the non-thermodynamical effect, such as the dissipation of the coronal currents flowing along the loops of the magnetic fields, thermal energy from the all-scale reconnection processes and the heating due to the MHD waves propagating to the coronae. The waves exchange the energy with the coronal plasma by means of the Landau damping.

(Figure here)

Figure 7.5: The system in the frame moving with phase speed v_φ . At point A the speed of the particle is a little smaller than v_φ , hence the particle falls behind into the point x' , where the electric potential is higher and thus pushes the particle forward. Particles having $v < v_\varphi$ are being accelerated. Contrary, particles with $v > v_\varphi$ are decelerated. If in total there is less faster-than-the-wave particles than slower-than-the-wave particles, the energy streams from the wave to the particles and the perturbation is damped. This is the case of Landau damping, when $\frac{\partial f_0}{\partial v_x} < 0$. The other case is obvious.

Appendices

Appendix A

Guiding centre motion

A.1 Alternative derivation of (3.133)

$$\begin{aligned}\langle (\mathbf{e}_\perp \times \mathbf{b})(\mathbf{e}_\perp \cdot \nabla)B \rangle &= \left\langle \left[\begin{pmatrix} \cos \phi \\ \sin \phi \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ b \end{pmatrix} \right] \left[\begin{pmatrix} \cos \phi \\ \sin \phi \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \nabla_1 B \\ \nabla_2 B \\ \nabla_3 B \end{pmatrix} \right] \right\rangle = \\ &= \left\langle \begin{pmatrix} b \sin \phi \\ -b \cos \phi \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} (\cos \phi \nabla_1 B + \sin \phi \nabla_2 B) \right\rangle = \\ &= \left\langle \begin{pmatrix} b \sin \phi \cos \phi \nabla_1 B + b \sin^2 \phi \nabla_2 B \\ -b \cos^2 \phi \nabla_1 B - b \sin \phi \cos \phi \nabla_2 B \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \right\rangle = \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -b \nabla_2 B \\ b \nabla_1 B \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = -\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ b \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} \nabla_1 B \\ \nabla_2 B \\ \nabla_3 B \end{pmatrix} = \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{b} \times \nabla B \end{aligned} \tag{A.1}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle (\mathbf{e}_\perp \times [\mathbf{e}_\perp \cdot \nabla] \mathbf{b}) \rangle &= \left\langle \begin{pmatrix} \cos \phi \\ \sin \phi \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \times \left[\begin{pmatrix} \cos \phi \\ \sin \phi \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \nabla_1 \mathbf{b} \\ \nabla_2 \mathbf{b} \\ \nabla_3 \mathbf{b} \end{pmatrix} \right] \right\rangle = \\
&= \left\langle \begin{pmatrix} \cos \phi \\ \sin \phi \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \times \left[(\cos \phi, \sin \phi, 0) \begin{pmatrix} \nabla_1 b_1 & \nabla_1 b_2 & \nabla_1 b_3 \\ \nabla_2 b_1 & \nabla_2 b_2 & \nabla_2 b_3 \\ \nabla_3 b_1 & \nabla_3 b_2 & \nabla_3 b_3 \end{pmatrix} \right] \right\rangle = \\
&= \left\langle \begin{pmatrix} \cos \phi \\ \sin \phi \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} \cos \phi \nabla_1 b_1 + \sin \phi \nabla_2 b_1 \\ \cos \phi \nabla_1 b_2 + \sin \phi \nabla_2 b_2 \\ \cos \phi \nabla_1 b_3 + \sin \phi \nabla_2 b_3 \end{pmatrix} \right\rangle = \\
&= \left\langle \begin{pmatrix} \sin \phi \cos \phi \nabla_1 b_3 + \sin^2 \phi \nabla_2 b_3 \\ -\cos^2 \phi \nabla_1 b_3 - \cos \phi \sin \phi \nabla_2 b_3 \\ -\sin \phi \cos \phi \nabla_1 b_1 - \sin^2 \phi \nabla_2 b_1 + \cos^2 \phi \nabla_1 b_2 + \cos \phi \sin \phi \nabla_2 b_2 \end{pmatrix} \right\rangle = \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} \nabla_2 b_3 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \nabla_1 b_3 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \nabla_2 b_1 + \frac{1}{2} \nabla_1 b_2 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{e}_1 \nabla_2 - \mathbf{e}_2 \nabla_1) b_3 + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{b} (\nabla_1 b_2 - \nabla_2 b_1) = \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{b} (\nabla \times \mathbf{b})_3 + \mathcal{O} [(\nabla b_{[1,2]})^2] = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{b} [\mathbf{b} \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{b})]. \tag{A.2}
\end{aligned}$$

Note that in the second step we expressed the dot product by means of matrix multiplication respecting the rule $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = a^T \mathbf{b} = ab^T$, where a is the matrix representation of vector \mathbf{a} .

A.2 Derivation of equations (3.137)–(3.139)

Derive equations for variables in the perpendicular plane

$$\left\langle \frac{dv_\parallel}{dt} \right\rangle = \frac{E_\parallel}{\epsilon} - \frac{u_\perp^2}{2B} \nabla_\parallel B + \mathbf{v}_E \cdot D_t \mathbf{b} \tag{A.3}$$

$$\left\langle \frac{du_\perp}{dt} \right\rangle = \frac{v_\parallel u_\perp}{2B} \nabla_\parallel B - \frac{u_\perp}{2} (\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}_E - \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla_\parallel \mathbf{v}_E) \tag{A.4}$$

$$\left\langle \frac{d\phi}{dt} \right\rangle = -\frac{B}{\epsilon} - \mathbf{e}_2 \cdot D_t \mathbf{e}_1 - \frac{v_\parallel}{2} \mathbf{b} \cdot \nabla \times (v_\parallel \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{v}_E) \tag{A.5}$$